

Solaris Advanced User's Guide

2550 Garcia Avenue
Mountain View, CA 94043
U.S.A.



SunSoft
A Sun Microsystems, Inc. Business

© 1995 Sun Microsystems, Inc. 2550 Garcia Avenue, Mountain View, California 94043-1100 U.S.A.

All rights reserved. This product or document is protected by copyright and distributed under licenses restricting its use, copying, distribution and decompilation. No part of this product or document may be reproduced in any form by any means without prior written authorization of Sun and its licensors, if any.

Portions of this product may be derived from the UNIX[®] system and from the Berkeley 4.3 BSD system, licensed from the University of California. Third-party software, including font technology in this product, is protected by copyright and licensed from Sun's Suppliers.

RESTRICTED RIGHTS LEGEND: Use, duplication, or disclosure by the government is subject to restrictions as set forth in subparagraph (c)(1)(ii) of the Rights in Technical Data and Computer Software clause at DFARS 252.227-7013 and FAR 52.227-19. The product described in this manual may be protected by one or more U.S. patents, foreign patents, or pending applications.

TRADEMARKS

Sun, Sun Microsystems, the Sun logo, SunSoft, the SunSoft logo, Solaris, SunOS, OpenWindows, DeskSet, ONC, ONC+, and NFS are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and may be protected as trademarks in other countries. UNIX is a registered trademark in the United States and other countries, exclusively licensed through X/Open Company, Ltd. OPEN LOOK is a registered trademark of Novell, Inc. PostScript and Display PostScript are trademarks of Adobe Systems, Inc. All other product, service, or company names mentioned herein are claimed as trademarks and trade names by their respective companies.

All SPARC trademarks, including the SCD Compliant Logo, are trademarks or registered trademarks of SPARC International, Inc. in the United States and may be protected as trademarks in other countries. SPARCcenter, SPARCcluster, SPARCcompiler, SPARCdesign, SPARC811, SPARCengine, SPARCprinter, SPARCserver, SPARCstation, SPARCstorage, SPARCworks, microSPARC, microSPARC-II, and UltraSPARC are licensed exclusively to Sun Microsystems, Inc. Products bearing SPARC trademarks are based upon an architecture developed by Sun Microsystems, Inc.

The OPEN LOOK[™] and Sun[™] Graphical User Interfaces were developed by Sun Microsystems, Inc. for its users and licensees. Sun acknowledges the pioneering efforts of Xerox in researching and developing the concept of visual or graphical user interfaces for the computer industry. Sun holds a non-exclusive license from Xerox to the Xerox Graphical User Interface, which license also covers Sun's licensees who implement OPEN LOOK GUI's and otherwise comply with Sun's written license agreements.

X Window System is a trademark of X Consortium, Inc.

THIS PUBLICATION IS PROVIDED "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OR NON-INFRINGEMENT.

THIS PUBLICATION COULD INCLUDE TECHNICAL INACCURACIES OR TYPOGRAPHICAL ERRORS. CHANGES ARE PERIODICALLY ADDED TO THE INFORMATION HEREIN, THESE CHANGES WILL BE INCORPORATED IN NEW EDITIONS OF THE PUBLICATION. SUN MICROSYSTEMS, INC. MAY MAKE IMPROVEMENTS AND/OR CHANGES IN THE PRODUCT(S) AND/OR THE PROGRAM(S) DESCRIBED IN THIS PUBLICATION AT ANY TIME.



Contents

About This Book	xv
1. Logging In to SunOS and Starting OpenWindows	1
Logging In.....	1
Your Login Shell.....	2
Logging Out	3
Keyboard Equivalents.....	4
OpenWindows Start-up Considerations.....	5
The OPENWINHOME Environment Variable	6
Using the Correct Start-Up File	7
Starting the OpenWindows User Environment.....	9
Displaying the OpenWindows Software.....	9
If OpenWindows Won't Display	11
Quitting the OpenWindows Environment.....	11
Special OpenWindows Start-up Options	12
Starting with Reduced Network Security.....	13

Starting with Various Monitor Types	13
<u>SPARC</u> Starting with Multiple Monitors.	13
2. Basic SunOS Commands	17
The Command Prompt	17
Entering Commands	18
Correcting Typing Mistakes	18
Entering Multiple Commands and Long Commands.	19
Repeating Previous Commands.	20
Adding Command Options	21
Redirecting and Piping Command Output	21
Running Commands in the Background	23
Getting Help with OS Commands.	24
Displaying Manual Pages with <code>man</code>	24
Displaying a One-line Summary with <code>whatis</code>	24
Keyword Lookup with <code>apropos</code>	25
3. Working with Files and Directories.	27
File Concepts	27
Using File Commands.	28
Before You Begin	28
Creating a Test File	29
Listing Files (<code>ls</code>)	29
Copying Files (<code>cp</code>)	29
Moving and Renaming Files (<code>mv</code>)	30
Deleting Files (<code>rm</code>)	30

Displaying File Contents (<code>more</code> , <code>cat</code>).....	31
Displaying File Type (<code>file</code>).....	32
Directories and Hierarchy.....	32
Directory Hierarchy.....	32
Print Working Directory (<code>pwd</code>).....	33
Your Home Directory	34
Change Working Directory (<code>cd</code>).....	34
Creating a Directory (<code>mkdir</code>).....	36
Relative Path Names.....	36
Moving and Renaming Directories	37
Copying Directories.....	37
Removing Directories (<code>rmdir</code>).....	38
Looking at Differences Between Files (<code>diff</code>)	39
Comparing Three Different Files (<code>diff3</code>)	41
Using <code>bdiff</code> on Large Files.....	41
Looking Up Files (<code>find</code>).....	41
File and Directory Security.....	44
Displaying Permissions and Status (<code>ls -l</code>).....	45
Listing “Hidden” Files (<code>ls -a</code>)	46
Changing Permissions (<code>chmod</code>)	47
Setting Absolute Permissions.....	50
4. Searching Files	55
Searching for Patterns with <code>grep</code>	55
<code>grep</code> as a Filter.....	56

grep with Multi-Word Strings	57
Searching for Lines without a Certain String	58
More on grep	58
Searching for Metacharacters	60
Single or Double Quotes on Command Lines	61
5. Passwords, Processes, and Disk Storage	63
Using a Password	63
Changing Your Password	64
Password Aging	65
Processes and PIDs	66
What Commands Are Running Now (ps)	66
Terminating Processes (kill)	67
Managing Disk Storage	68
Displaying Disk Usage (df -k)	68
Displaying Directory Usage (du)	68
6. Using the vi Editor	69
Starting vi	70
Creating a File	70
The Status Line	71
The Two Modes of vi	71
Entry Mode	71
Command Mode	72
Ending a Session	73

Saving Changes and Quitting <code>vi</code>	73
Printing a File	75
Basic <code>vi</code> Commands	75
Moving Around in a File.	75
Inserting Text	78
Changing Text	79
Undoing Changes	80
Deleting Text.	81
Copying and Moving Text — Yank, Delete, and Put.	82
Using a Count to Repeat Commands	84
Using <code>ex</code> Commands.	84
Turning Line Numbers On and Off	84
Copying Lines	85
Moving Lines	86
Deleting Lines	87
Searching and Replacing with <code>vi</code>	87
Finding a Character String	87
Refining the Search	88
Replacing a Character String	89
Going to a Specific Line.	90
Inserting One File into Another	91
Editing Multiple Files	91
Editing a Series of Files.	92
Copying Lines Between Files	92

Setting vi Parameters	93
Recovering from a Crash.....	93
Summary of Basic vi Commands	93
7. Using Mail	97
mailx Basics.....	97
Starting mailx.....	98
Sending Yourself a Sample Letter	98
Reading Your Sample Letter.....	100
Quitting mailx	101
Reading Letters	102
Deleting (and Undeleting) Letters.....	103
Printing Letters.....	105
Sending Letters.....	105
Undeliverable Letters	107
Canceling an Unsent Letter	107
Adding Carbon and Blind Carbon Copies	108
Inserting a Copy of a Letter or File	109
Replying to a Letter.....	110
Saving and Retrieving Letters	110
Saving and Copying Letters in Files	110
Saving and Copying Letters in Folders.....	111
Reading Letters in Files and Folders.....	113
Using vi with mailx	114
Mail Aliases	115

Setting Up Mail Aliases in <code>.mailrc</code>	115
Setting Up Mail Aliases in <code>/etc/aliases</code>	117
Tilde Commands	121
Getting Help: Other <code>mailx</code> Commands.....	122
8. Using Printers	123
Submitting Print Requests	123
Submitting Print Requests to the Default Printer	124
Submitting Print Requests Using a Printer Name.....	124
Requesting Notification when Printing is Complete.....	125
Printing Multiple Copies	126
Summary Table of <code>lp</code> Options	126
Determining Printer Status.....	127
Checking on the Status of Your Print Requests	127
Checking on Available Printers	128
Displaying All Status Information.....	128
Displaying Status for Printers	129
Displaying Printer Characteristics.....	130
Summary Table of <code>lpstat</code> Options	131
Canceling a Print Request.....	132
Canceling a Print Request by ID Number	133
Canceling a Print Request by Printer Name.....	133
9. Using the Network	135
Networking Concepts	135
Logging In Remotely (<code>rlogin</code>)	136

rlogin without a Home Directory.....	137
rlogin as Someone Else	137
rlogin to an Unknown Machine	138
Aborting an rlogin Connection.....	138
Suspending an rlogin Connection	139
Verifying Your Location (who am i)	140
Copying Files Remotely (rcp)	141
Copying from Another Machine to Yours	141
Copying from Your Machine to Another	142
Executing Commands Remotely (rsh)	142
Viewing User Information (rusers).....	143
10. Customizing Your Working Environment	145
Initialization Files	146
Environment Variables	147
The User Profile	147
Setting the PATH Variable	149
Aliases (C Shell Only)	150
Changing Your Command Prompt	151
Other Useful Variables	152
Setting Default File Permissions	153
Customizing OpenWindows Fonts	155
Specifying the Font Style and Point Size.....	155
Listing the Available Fonts	158

Calibrating Your Color Monitor	159
Monitor Calibration Concepts	159
Adjusting Your Viewing Environment	161
Connecting the Calibrator Puck	165
Running Calibrator Tool	165
Error Messages	171
A. Migrating to OpenWindows Version 3.3, or Later Versions .	175
<u>SPARC</u> Migrating from the SunView Environment	175
<u>SPARC</u> The .defaults and .xdefaults Files	175
Migrating from a pre-Version 3.3 OpenWindows Environment	176
The OPENWINHOME Environment Variable	176
The .xinitrc File	177
Using the Correct Start-up File	178
Workspace Properties	179
Customizing the Workspace Menu	179
B. Making the Transition to Solaris 2.5	181
<u>SPARC</u> Making the Transition from SunOS 4.x	182
<u>SPARC</u> Changes Affecting SunOS 4.x Users	182
<u>SPARC</u> Changes Affecting SunOS 4.x System Administrators	183
<u>SPARC</u> Compatibility with SunOS 4.x Releases for SPARC	184
Systems	184
<u>x86</u> Making the Transition from Solaris 2.1 for x86	186
<u>x86</u> Changes affecting Users	186
<u>x86</u> Changes affecting System Administrators	186

<u>x86</u> Solaris 2.5 System Administration Tools	187
C. Modifying the Keyboard	189
Disabling/Enabling the Compose Key	189
<u>SPARC</u> Left-Handed Key Remapping	190
<u>SPARC</u> Using the Remapping Script	190
<u>SPARC</u> Undoing the Keyboard Remapping	192
<u>x86</u> Function Key and Control Key Remapping	194
<u>x86</u> Using the Remapping Script	194
D. Running Networked Applications	199
Using <code>rlogin</code> to Run a Networked Application	200
More About Security	201
Who Should Read this Section	202
Access Control Mechanisms	202
Authorization Protocols	203
Manipulating Access to the Server	205
Running Clients Remotely, or Locally as Another User . . .	208
E. SPARC — DECnet Internetworking (DNI)	211
Setting Up DECnet Internetworking	212
Displaying a Remote Client on an OpenWindows Machine . .	213
Displaying a Remote Client on a VAX	213
F. Managing Your System	217
Starting Admintool	218
Adding Yourself to the <code>sysadmin</code> Group	219
Using Admintool to Perform Common Tasks	220

About Managing Hosts.....	220
About Managing Printers.....	221
About Managing Serial Ports.....	222
G. Using PCMCIA Cards	223
Introduction	223
Support Requirements	224
Other Information Sources	224
Using a PCMCIA Memory Card	225
File Copying Methods.....	225
Write-Protect Mode	225
PCMCIA Memory Cards and Power Management's Resume/Suspend Feature	226
Copying Files with the <code>tar</code> Command.....	227
Copying Files	230
Copying Files with Volume Management Enabled	232
Copying Files	237
Copying Files with Volume Management Disabled	239
Copying Files	242
Using a PCMCIA Serial/ModemCard	243
PCMCIA Serial/Modem Card Device Names.....	243
PCMCIA Serial/Modem Cards and Power Management's Resume/Suspend Feature	243
Index.....	245

About This Book

Who Should Read This Book

This book is aimed at users of the Solaris™ System Software (version 2.x). The Solaris System Software consists of SunOS™ and OpenWindows™.

See Appendix B, “Making the Transition to Solaris 2.5,” if you are transitioning from Solaris 1.x to Solaris 2.x.

Before Reading This Book

Your system should be installed and ready for use. If it is not, see the installation manual specific to your system before continuing.

Additional Reading

The Solaris System Software AnswerBook provides access to a number of books about the Solaris software, which are organized into the following related sets:

- Sun Administrator’s Set
This set offers detailed installation and system administration information for a variety of system configurations, including larger networks of Sun workstations.

-
- **Sun Developer's Set**
This set gives software developers the information they need to write, debug, and maintain programs on the system.
 - **Sun Reference Manual Set**
This set contains a description for every SunOS command. Called `man` pages, they can optionally be installed as online documentation.
 - **Sun User's Set**
This set offers a detailed description of various aspects of the SunOS system, including using SunOS commands, working with OpenWindows, customizing your work environment, handling problems, writing shell scripts, using electronic mail, and working on the network.

Typographic Conventions

The following conventions are used in this guide:

- *Italic type* is used for emphasis, command arguments, variables, and book titles. For example:

You must type the *filename* argument as described in *man Pages(1): User Commands*.

- **Courier bold type** indicates what you type during a sample session. For example:

```
$ date
```

- **Courier type** is used for program listings, command names, program names, or system names. For example:

You can become superuser by typing `root` at the login prompt or by typing the `su` command at the command prompt.

It is also used for text that the system displays on the screen. For example:

```
$ who  
bozo      console      Sep 11 15:36
```


-
- Names of mouse buttons are referred to by function, not by location, and are capitalized. For example, “Press SELECT” is used, not “Press left.”

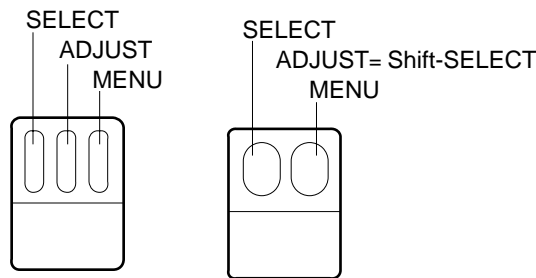


Figure P-1 Default Functions of the Mouse Buttons

For a three-button mouse, the default function assignments are:

- SELECT = the left mouse button
- ADJUST = the middle mouse button
- MENU = the right mouse button

For a two-button mouse, the default function assignments are:

- SELECT = the left mouse button
- MENU = the right mouse button

To use the ADJUST function on a two-button mouse, press and hold the keyboard Shift key and click the SELECT mouse button.

- Names of keys on the keyboard have initial capitals (for example, Press the Shift key). The key referred to as Return is labeled Enter on some keyboards.

Note – Solaris supports both SPARC and x86 or PowerPC-based machines, whose keyboards differ. Consequently, some keyboard equivalents of commands found in OpenWindows menus differ, according to keyboard.

For most keyboard equivalents, Solaris supports a Meta key combination that can be used on both platforms. See Chapter 1, “Logging In to SunOS and Starting OpenWindows,” for a list of command functions and their various keyboard equivalents.

-
- Open Windows menu commands carried out using keyboard equivalents (also called *keyboard accelerators*) are represented in this manual with the following convention: a dash (-) indicates that you press two keys at the same time.

For example, Ctrl-Alt means that you press and hold both the Control and Alt keys at the same time; Ctrl-Alt-c means that you press and hold Control and Alt at the same time and simultaneously type c.

- Keyboard equivalents are obtained by pressing the Meta key and one or more additional keys on the keyboard. On SPARC keyboards the Meta key is the <> key; on x86 or PowerPC keyboards the Meta key is obtained by pressing the Ctrl and Alt keys simultaneously (Ctrl-Alt). For more information on keyboard equivalents, see Chapter 1, “Logging In to SunOS and Starting OpenWindows,”.
- This guide uses the following notation to describe choosing a menu option. For example: choose Workspace ► Programs.
- When the entire menu is discussed, or when the default menu item is discussed, a *default ring*, surrounds the default item of the menu. By default clicking SELECT on a menu button displays the entire menu.

Platform-Specific Conventions

The following symbols preceding a section or procedure title indicate that the section or procedure pertains only to the particular platform:

SPARC Denotes a SPARC platform-specific section or procedure

x86 Denotes an x86 platform-specific section or procedure

PowerPC Denotes a PowerPC platform-specific section or procedure

Platform-specific notes are indicated as follows:

SPARC – This note is specific to the SPARC platform.

x86 – This note is specific to the x86 platform.

PowerPC – This note is specific to the PowerPC platform.

Platform-specific bullet items are indicated as follows:

- **SPARC**: This bullet is specific to the SPARC platform.
- **x86**: This bullet is specific to the x86 platform.
- **PowerPC**: This bullet is specific to the PowerPC platform.

If a code sample, table, or figure pertains to a specific platform, the name of the particular platform appears at the beginning of the title. For example:

Table 1-1 SPARC: Title Specific to SPARC Platform

Table 1-2 x86: Title Specific to x86 Platform

Table 1-3 PowerPC: Title Specific to PowerPC Platform

Logging In to SunOS and Starting OpenWindows



The OpenWindows Version software should already be installed on your hard disk or on an accessible server in your file system. If you are unsure about this, see your system administrator, or refer to the installation manual for your specific platform.

This chapter describes how to log in to your system, how to use a shell command interpreter, how to mount and start up the OpenWindows user environment, how to exit the window system, and how to log out. It also describes some special cases, such as configuring the OpenWindows environment for dual monitors.

Logging In

A *standard work session* is defined as the interval between the time you log in to the system and the time you log out. The SunOS multiuser environment requires that you identify yourself each time you want to use the system. Your *login name* (also known as a *user name* or an *account*) serves as your identity to the system and to other users on the system. Your *password* restricts use of your account to those people who know the password. If you don't already have a login name and password, ask the person who is designated as the *system administrator* for your system to set up an account for you. Once you have this information, you are ready to log in.

Before you log in to the system, your screen should look similar to the following:

```
login:
```

Enter the login name given to you by the system administrator and press the Return key. For example, if your login name is `spanky`, type:

```
login: spanky
```

and press Return. Next, the system requests your password as follows:

```
login: spanky  
Password:
```

Type your password at the prompt and press Return. (If your account does not have a password assigned to it, the system logs you in without asking you for a password.) Note that the system does not display (*echo*) your password on the screen as you type it. This is to help prevent others from discovering your password.

Your Login Shell

In the chapters that follow, you'll begin entering SunOS commands. When you issue a command to the system, you are actually providing information to a command interpretation program, called a *shell*. The shell program then reads the information you have provided and causes the proper action to take place within the system.

The default shell for SunOS system software is the Bourne shell, but there are also two other shell programs available within the operating system: the C shell and the Korn shell. Each of these shells has its own unique differences.

Note – You can get specific information about any SunOS command, including each of the available shells, by viewing its `man` (manual reference) page. For more information on `man` pages, see “Displaying Manual Pages with `man`” in Chapter 2, “Basic SunOS Commands.”

When you initially log in to the system (or open a new Command Tool or Shell Tool window) and you see your command prompt, it indicates that a shell program has been started for you automatically. This shell is called your *login shell*. If your login shell is not the SunOS default (the Bourne shell), it is because a different shell (either the C or Korn shell) has been specified for you by your system administrator.

As mentioned, each shell has its differences. Some commands or procedures available when using one shell may not be available when using another. With this in mind, please note that whenever any commands or procedures are presented in this manual that are not available using the default shell for SunOS (the Bourne shell), the sections are clearly marked as such.

Logging Out

When you have finished your work session and are ready to exit the operating system, type the following to log out:

```
$ exit
```

After a moment, the system once again displays the login prompt:

```
$ exit  
login:
```

When you see the login prompt, it indicates that you have successfully logged out. The system is now ready for you or another user to log in.

Note – With the SunOS operating system, turning off your workstation or terminal does *not* necessarily log you out. Unless you log out explicitly, you may remain logged in to the system.

Keyboard Equivalents

Although the operations you do not require extensive use of OpenWindows menus and the mouse, in some cases you can speed up these operations by using a sequence of keystrokes, called *keyboard accelerators*, that duplicate the operations of the mouse and menus, and of the pre-configured keyboard keys.

The following table lists several command operations and the keyboard equivalents for both SPARC and x86 or PowerPC-based machines.

Note – The Meta key is the <> key on SPARC keyboards and is obtained on x86 or PowerPC keyboards by pressing Ctrl-Alt.

To carry out a keyboard accelerator operation, press and hold the first key (Meta or Control-Alt together) and type the second key. For example, to cut selected text, press and hold the Meta key and press *x* on a SPARC system; on an x86 or PowerPC system, press and hold Control and Alt together and press *x* simultaneously

Table 1-1 Keyboard Accelerators

Operation	Keyboard Equivalent	Action
Again	Meta - a	Repeats the previous operation
Copy	Meta - c	Copies the selection to the clipboard
Cut	Meta - x	Cuts the selection and puts it on the clipboard
Find	Meta - f	Finds the selection to the right of the caret
Help	Help or F1	Displays a help window with context-sensitive help for the object at the pointer location
New	Meta - n	Loads a new file
Open (File)	Meta - o	Opens a file (for example, if you've highlighted a file icon in File Manager)
Open (Window)	Meta - w	Opens an icon or closes a window to an icon

Table 1-1 Keyboard Accelerators (Continued)

Operation	Keyboard Equivalent	Action
Paste	Meta - v	Copies the clipboard selection to the insertion point
Print	Meta - p	Sends the file to the printer (for example, if you've highlighted a file icon in File Manager)
Props	Meta - i	Displays the property window for the application at the pointer location
Redo	Shift-Meta - p	Undoes an Undo
Save	Meta - s	Save the current file
Stop	Stop or Esc	Stops the current operation
Undo	Meta - u	Undoes the previous operation

OpenWindows Start-up Considerations

Before you start the OpenWindows software, take note of these considerations. If none of these considerations apply to you, skip ahead to “Displaying the OpenWindows Software,” in this chapter.

- If it is your responsibility to set up an OpenWindows server on your network, refer to the installation manual for your platform.
- If you are currently running the OpenWindows Version 2 software see Appendix A, “Migrating to OpenWindows Version 3.3, or Later Versions.”
- If you are currently running the SunView user environment, see Appendix A, “Migrating to OpenWindows Version 3.3, or Later Versions.”
- If you are currently running a version of OpenWindows that is earlier than Version 3.3, see “The OPENWINHOME Environment Variable” and “Using the Correct Start-Up File,” in this chapter.

x86 – If you changed the type of mouse device, keyboard, or video adaptor card on your system after installing Solaris, you'll need to run the `devconfig` program to update system configuration. See the `devconfig(1M)` man page.

The OPENWINHOME Environment Variable

If you are currently running a version of the OpenWindows software earlier than Version 3.3, you may have set up your system to use the OPENWINHOME environment variable. It is no longer recommended that users set the OPENWINHOME environment variable, either by-hand or from a start-up file.

When you run the `openwin` command it automatically sets the OPENWINHOME environment variable to `/usr/openwin`; therefore, you do not need to do it.

If you have set the OPENWINHOME environment variable in either the `.profile` or `.cshrc` file in your home directory, comment out the line or delete it altogether *before* running OpenWindows Version 3.3, or a later version.

To remove, or comment out, the OPENWINHOME environment variable in the `.profile` or `.cshrc` file:

1. Open the `.profile` or `.cshrc` file using a text editor such as `vi`.
2. Type a pound sign (#) before the variable, as shown below, or delete the line entirely.

If you are working in the `.profile` file, do Step a; if you are working in the `.cshrc` file, do Step b.

- a. In the `.profile` file:

```
#OPENWINHOME=/usr/openwin
```

- a. In the `.cshrc` file:

```
#setenv OPENWINHOME /usr/openwin
```

3. Save and quit the file.

4. Unset the `OPENWINHOME` environment variable (or log out and log back in).

If you are running the Bourne or Korn shell, do Step a. If you are running the C shell, do Step b.

a. In the Bourne or Korn shell, type:

```
$ unset OPENWINHOME
```

b. In the C shell, type:

```
example% unsetenv OPENWINHOME
```

Once you have unset the environment variable you are ready to run the OpenWindows software, as described in “Displaying the OpenWindows Software,” in this chapter.

Using the Correct Start-Up File

If you are currently running a version of the OpenWindows software earlier than Version 3.3, it is important to determine the status of your `.xinitrc` file. The `.xinitrc` file is an OpenWindows start-up file your home directory that may contain user-defined options.

To determine the status of your `.xinitrc` file, type the following commands:

```
$ cd  
$ ls -a .xinitrc
```

Depending on the output of this command, do one of the following things:

- If you do not have a `.xinitrc` file (that is, the results of the previous `ls -a` command does not return a listing for the file) do nothing. If there is no `.xinitrc` file in your home directory, OpenWindows uses the system default start-up file.

- If you have a `.xinitrc` file (that is, the result of the previous `ls -a` command returns a listing for the file), but you have never made any changes to the file or do not want to keep the changes you have made, do Step 1 in “Start-Up File Procedures.”
- If you have a `.xinitrc` file (that is, the result of the previous `ls -a` command returns a listing for the file), and you have made changes to the file that you want to keep, do Step 2 in “Start-Up File Procedures.”

Start-Up File Procedures

1. To delete the `.xinitrc` file from your home directory, type the following command:

```
$ rm .xinitrc
```

2. To retain the changes to your `.xinitrc` file, do the following steps:

- a. Move `.xinitrc` to `.xinitrc.save`:

```
$ mv .xinitrc .xinitrc.save
```

- b. Copy `/usr/openwin/lib/Xinitrc` to `.xinitrc` in your home directory:

```
$ cp /usr/openwin/lib/Xinitrc $HOME/.xinitrc
```

- c. Add the lines that you want to keep from the `.xinitrc.save` to `.xinitrc`.



Caution – When editing the `.xinitrc` file, do not add a secondary version of `olwm`, do not add `svenv`, and do not remove the line containing `/usr/openwin/lib/openwin-sys`.

Starting the OpenWindows User Environment

To start the OpenWindows user environment you perform the following general steps:

1. Using NFS, mount the OpenWindows software from the server on which it is installed.

For information on how to mount the OpenWindows software from a server, see *OpenWindows Desktop Reference Manual*, or talk to your system administrator.

2. Start the OpenWindows software with the command `openwin`, adding any additional start-up options as needed.

Displaying the OpenWindows Software

Once you have mounted the OpenWindows software from a server and run the OpenWindows installation script you are ready to start the OpenWindows software.

To start the OpenWindows software, type `/usr/openwin/bin/openwin` at the shell prompt and press Return.

```
$ /usr/openwin/bin/openwin
```

This displays the OpenWindows Version 3.3 screen and sets up the OpenWindows working environment.

Displaying OpenWindows Quickly

Once you have successfully started OpenWindows, you can set up your system to use a shortcut so that you do not need to type the full OpenWindows path each time.

If you are using the Bourne or Korn shells you do this by placing a shell function in your `.profile` file. If you are using the C shell you put an *alias* in your `.cshrc` file. Both the `.profile` and `.cshrc` files are found in your home directory.

When you have placed the shortcut in the appropriate file for your shell, to start OpenWindows simply type:

```
$ openwin
```

How to enter the OpenWindows shortcut into your start-up files is described in the following sections, “In the .profile File,” and “In the .cshrc File.”

In the .profile File

To enter the OpenWindows shortcut into your .profile file:

- 1. Open the .profile file using a text editor such as vi.**
- 2. Enter the following shell function, exactly as shown, into the file:**

```
openwin () {  
    /usr/openwin/bin/openwin  
}
```

- 3. Save and quit the file.**
- 4. Log out and log back in to activate the shortcut, or type:**

```
$ . .profile
```

Now, whenever you want to start OpenWindows, you simply have to type openwin.

In the .cshrc File

To enter the OpenWindows shortcut into your .cshrc file:

- 1. Open the .cshrc file using a text editor such as vi.**
- 2. Enter the following alias command, exactly as shown, into the file:**

```
alias openwin /usr/openwin/bin/openwin
```

3. Save and quit the file.

4. Log out and log back in to activate the shortcut, or type:

```
example% source .cshrc
```

Now, whenever you want to start OpenWindows, you simply have to type `openwin`.

If OpenWindows Won't Display

When you start the OpenWindows software it is accessed through the directory `/usr/openwin`. The OpenWindows software is installed in this location by default. Many applications, for example Calendar Manager, cannot load unless the OpenWindows software is properly installed in `/usr/openwin`.

If your OpenWindows does not start when you type the command `/usr/openwin/bin/openwin`, either you do not have the OpenWindows software installed, or it is installed in a directory other than `/usr/openwin`. See the *OpenWindows Desktop Reference Manual*, or see your system administrator.

Quitting the OpenWindows Environment

Once you have displayed the OpenWindows software and are working in the windows environment, you cannot log out as you would from a standard SunOS command-line session. You must first exit from the windows environment and then log out.

If you type `logout` at a shell prompt, you see the message:

```
Not login shell.
```

To exit from the OpenWindows environment, follow these steps:

- 1. Position the mouse so that the arrow (*pointer*) is on the background of your screen (the *workspace*).**

2. Press the MENU mouse button.

The Workspace menu appears, presenting several options.

3. Drag the pointer down the menu until you highlight the last menu item, Exit.

4. Release the mouse button.

A popup window appears, asking you to confirm that you want to exit the window system.

5. Position the pointer on Exit and click the SELECT mouse button.

After a few moments all the windows are dismissed and the system prompt appears in the lower left corner of your screen.

Special OpenWindows Start-up Options

Most users can start the OpenWindows software by following the steps described in “Displaying the OpenWindows Software.” However, in some cases you may want to use additional options to modify the OpenWindows start-up.

This section describes the following special cases:

- Starting the OpenWindows software with reduced network security.
- Starting the OpenWindows software with various monitor and frame buffer types.
- Starting the OpenWindows software on multiple screens.

To start up the OpenWindows software with special options, you use the `openwin` command:

```
$ openwin [ options ]
```

In the preceding example, *options* are the command line options that enable you to tailor the default setup of the server. The following sections describe some of more commonly used options.

Starting with Reduced Network Security

If you are operating in an open networked environment *and are not concerned about network security*, you may want to use the `-noauth` option so that other users can run applications on your system.

The following command overrides the default security feature, which enables you to specify other users who can access your window server:

```
$ openwin -noauth
```

Starting with Various Monitor Types

If you have a gray-scale monitor (a non-color monitor with a frame buffer of 8 bits or more) you may want to use the `grayvis` option when you start up the OpenWindows software. This may improve certain aspects of your OpenWindows display, but it is not required.

To use this option, type the following at the system prompt:

```
$ cd  
$ openwin -dev /dev/fb grayvis
```

SPARC *Starting with Multiple Monitors*

SPARC – Note the following sections concerning “Starting with Multiple Monitors” apply only to SPARC-based machines. These sections require some system administration experience. If you have never configured a system, ask your system administrator for assistance.

To run the OpenWindows environment on multiple screens, you must inform the system of the additional devices and display types you want to run. You can either specify the device options or use the default values available with the `openwin` script that starts up the OpenWindows software.

Two options are required with the `openwin` command when you start the software on dual monitors:

```
$ openwin [ [ -dev device ] [ deviceoptions ] ]
```

The double brackets indicate that the combination of [`-dev device`] [`deviceoptions`] can be entered more than once on the command line (that is, once per device).

[`-dev device`]

The `device` command line option specifies the frame buffer device which the server should use for the display, or screen.

If the command line does not show this option, the server uses the default, `/dev/fb`. Multiple (more than one) occurrences of the `-dev` option on the command line indicate multiple displays on the same server.

[`deviceoptions`]

The `deviceoptions` command line option is a list of device modifiers that change the behavior of the device specified in the `-dev` option.

Device Option Examples

This section provides examples of stacked and side-by-side dual-monitor arrangements.

Note – In all examples, the order of the devices is important. The first device specified must be the screen physically placed to the left or top of the second device. The second device specified must be the screen physically placed to the right or bottom of the first device.

[left] [right]

The following command line instructs the system to start up two displays. The left display is the default frame buffer and the right display is a monochrome. This enables you to move the cursor left and right between the two displays.

```
$ openwin -dev /dev/fb left -dev /dev/fbs/bwtwo0 right
```

The following example is equivalent to the previous example. By default, the first device is to the left of the second device listed in the command line.

```
$ openwin -dev /dev/fb -dev /dev/fbs/bwtwo0
```

The following command line instructs the system to start up two displays. The right display is the default frame buffer and the left display is a monochrome. This setup enables you to move the cursor left and right between the two displays.

```
$ openwin -dev /dev/fb right -dev /dev/fbs/bwtwo0 left
```

[top] [bottom]

The following command line instructs the system to start up two displays. The top display is a CG6 and the bottom display is a monochrome. This setup enables you to move the cursor up and down between the two displays.

```
$ openwin -dev /dev/fbs/cgsix0 top -dev /dev/fbs/bwtwo0 bottom
```

The following example is *not* equivalent to the previous example. By default, the first device is to the *left* of the second device listed in the command line.

```
$ openwin -dev /dev/fbs/cgsix0 -dev /dev/fbs/bwtwo0
```

The following command line instructs the server to start up two displays. The bottom display is a CG6 and the top display is a monochrome. This setup enables you to move the cursor up and down between the two displays.

```
$ openwin -dev /dev/fbs/cgsix0 bottom -dev /dev/fbs/bwtwo0 top
```

Miscellaneous Notes

The following are important considerations when you are running multiple screens.

- By default, `olwm` manages all screens.
- You cannot move windows between screens.

Basic SunOS Commands



This chapter provides an introduction to user commands in the SunOS operating system. It describes how to enter commands, how to correct typing mistakes, how to enter long or multiple commands, how to use command options, and other useful information about SunOS commands.

To enter commands, use a Command Tool or Shell Tool window. To display these windows, select the Programs submenu on the Workspace menu.

The Command Prompt

Once you've logged in, the screen or window will be empty except for an initial prompt. The nature of this prompt will vary depending on the shell you are using and on how your system administrator originally set it up. Since the default command prompt for SunOS system software is the dollar sign (\$), this prompt is used in most of the examples presented in this manual.

If you decide later that you want to change your command prompt, see "Changing Your Command Prompt" in Chapter 10, "Customizing Your Working Environment" for instructions.

Entering Commands

When you see the command prompt, it means that the system is waiting for you to enter a command. Try entering the command `date` at the prompt, as shown in this example (type `date` and press the Return key):

```
$ date
Mon Feb 3 10:12:51 PST 1992
$
```

As you can see, this command displays the current date and time. Now try entering the same command, but capitalized:

```
$ Date
Date: Command not found.
$
```

As you can see, an uppercase `D` is not the same as a lowercase `d` when interpreted by the system. Nearly all commands in the SunOS operating system are lowercase.

Correcting Typing Mistakes

Suppose you started to type `Date`, but then realized your mistake before pressing the Return key. The text you type is not sent to the system until you press Return. Therefore, it is still possible to correct your mistake. You have two choices:

- Press the Delete or Backspace key to backspace to the error; or
- Type Ctrl-U to erase the entire line and start over. (Hold down the Control key and press “u”.)

Try both of these and see how they work. (The Delete/Backspace key varies on some systems. Ctrl-U should work on most systems.)

Entering Multiple Commands and Long Commands

You can enter more than one command on a single line. Simply place a semicolon (;) between the commands, as shown here with the `date` command and the `logname` command:

```
$ date; logname
Mon Feb 3 10:19:25 PST 1992
spanky
$
```

As you can see, this displays the current date and time (from the `date` command) and the login name of the user currently logged in to the system (from the `logname` command).

If you are typing a very long command, you can use the backslash character (\) to continue typing on a second line. For example:

```
$ date; \
logname
Mon Feb 3 10:23:25 PST 1992
hankw
$
```

Even though the `date` and `logname` commands are by no means long commands, they are used in this example to demonstrate the concept of continuing a set of commands on the next line in as simple a manner as possible. Later, when the commands you want to use are longer than the width of your screen, you'll see how using the backslash character can be extremely useful.

Note – If you are using the Shell Tool or Command Tool windows in the OpenWindows environment, you won't need to use the backslash character to continue typing commands on the next line. When you reach the end of a line, the commands you're typing wrap to the next line automatically, and the system executes all commands when you press Return.

Repeating Previous Commands

Note – The command repeating features described in this section are available only if you are using the C shell.

A quick way to repeat the last command you typed is to type `!!` and press Return. The system keeps a *history* of commands you type and is able to repeat previous commands. For example, if the last command you entered was `date`:

```
example% !!
date
Mon Feb 3 10:26:20 PST 1992
example%
```

You can also repeat any previously typed command by typing `!x`, where *x* is the desired command's corresponding number on the *history list*. To see the history list, type the `history` command and press Return. The following is an example of what you might see:

```
example% history
1  pwd
2  clear
3  ls -l
4  cd /usr/home/worker
5  logname
6  date
7  history
```

Another method for repeating characters from the history list is to follow the `!` with a negative number. For example, to repeat the second from the last command on the history list, you would type the following:

```
example% !-2
logname
hankw
example%
```

Using the example history list above, the `logname` command is repeated.

Still another method is to follow the `!` with the first few characters of a previous command. For example, if you had previously entered the `clear` command to clear your screen, you could type `!cl` to clear your screen again. With this method for repeating commands, however, you must use enough characters for the desired command to be unique in the history list. If you use only one letter after the `!`, the system will repeat the most recent command beginning with that letter.

Adding Command Options

Many commands have *options* that invoke special features of the command. For example, the `date` command has the option `-u`, which expresses the date in Greenwich Mean Time instead of local time:

```
$ date -u
Mon Feb 3 11:06:51 GMT 1993
$
```

Most options are expressed as a single character preceded by a dash (`-`). Not all commands have options. Some commands have more than one. If you use more than one option for a command, you can either type the options separately (`-a -b`) or together (`-ab`).

Redirecting and Piping Command Output

Unless you indicate otherwise, commands normally display their results on the screen. There are special symbols that allow you to *redirect* the output of a command. For example, you may want to save the output to a file rather than display it on the screen. The following example illustrates the use of the redirect symbol (`>`):

```
$ date > sample.file
$
```

In this example, the output from the `date` command is redirected to a new file called `sample.file`. Next, the contents of `sample.file` are displayed with the `more` command:

```
$ more sample.file
Mon Feb 3 12:56:26 PST 1993
$
```

As you can see, the contents of `sample.file` now contains the output from the `date` command. (See Chapter 3, “Working with Files and Directories,” for information on the `more` command.)

Sometimes you may want to redirect the output of one command as input to another command. A set of commands strung together in this fashion is called a *pipeline*. The symbol for this type of redirection is a vertical bar (`|`) called a *pipe*.

For example, instead of saving the output of a command to a file, you may want to direct it as input to the command for printing (`lp`) by using the pipe symbol (`|`). To send the output from the `date` command directly to the printer, you would enter the following:

```
$ date | lp
$
```

This would print the results of the `date` command. (See “Submitting Print Requests to the Default Printer” in Chapter 8, “Using Printers,” for information on using the `lp` command to print files.)

The command redirection examples shown here are quite simple, but when you learn more advanced commands, you will find that there are many uses for piping and redirection.

Running Commands in the Background

Often, it is convenient to initiate a command from the command prompt and then place that command in the *background*. When a command is not placed in the background, the next prompt does not appear until the command completes its task. However, some commands can take a long time to finish, and you might prefer to enter other commands in the meantime.

If you know you want to run a command in the background, type an ampersand (&) after the command as shown below. The number that follows is the process id:

```
$ bigjob &
[1] 21414
$
```

The command `bigjob` will now run in the background, and you can continue to enter other commands. After the job completes, you will see a message similar to the following the next time you enter another command, such as `date` in this example:

```
$ date
Mon Feb 3 10:23:25 PST 1992
[1] + Done    bigjob
$
```

If you are likely to log off before a background job completes, use the `nohup` (no hangup) command to allow the job to complete, as shown in this example. Otherwise, the background job will be terminated when you log off:

```
$ nohup bigjob &
[1] 21414
$
```

Getting Help with OS Commands

This section describes various on-line help features. These features allow you to view reference information from your workstation or terminal.

Note – The features described here are *in addition to* the OpenWindows help facilities.

Displaying Manual Pages with `man`

If you know the name of a command, but you are not sure what it does, the `man` command can be helpful. Type the following to find out more about this command:

```
$ man man
```

This command displays the first part of a SunOS manual reference page in the window display area. Press the Space Bar to see the next screen, or press the Q key to quit and return to the command prompt. Use the `man` command to see all the available options and to show the proper command syntax. Manual reference pages often provide examples which illustrate various uses of the command.

Displaying a One-line Summary with `what is`

If you want just a one-line summary of the command's function, use the `what is` command, as shown here:

```
$ what is date
date (1)          -display or set the date
$
```

Notice the number in parentheses after the command name in the above example. This number indicates the section to which this command belongs. Commands are grouped into various categories according to function. Most user commands are in section 1. By common convention, the section number is

displayed in parentheses after the name of the command. If you look for the printed manual reference page for a command, you will find it in alphabetical order within its group.

Keyword Lookup with `apropos`

Suppose you know what you want to do, but you're not sure of the command to use. Then the `apropos` command is helpful. This command locates commands by keyword lookup. The `apropos` command lists all commands whose one-line summaries contain any keywords you supply. This can lead to a very lengthy display, as some keywords may appear in many places.

For some examples of `apropos` output, try entering one or more of the following:

- `apropos who`
- `apropos execute`
- `apropos apropos`

If you do enter a keyword that generates an unreasonably lengthy display, pressing `Ctrl-C` interrupts the display and returns you to the command prompt. (Hold down the Control key and press “c”.)

Working with Files and Directories



The SunOS command line is used to manipulate files and directories. You type in the file and directory names in conjunction with SunOS commands to carry out specific operations. This is different than using the OpenWindows File Manager, where files are displayed as icons that can be clicked on and moved, and commands are selected from menus.

This chapter introduces you to the concepts and procedures used to work with files and directories from the SunOS command line. These operations apply to any SunOS command line, whether you are using a Shell or Command Tool in the OpenWindows environment or are logged in from a remote terminal. To fully make use of the SunOS operating system it is essential for you to understand the concepts presented in this chapter.

File Concepts

The *file* is the basic unit in the SunOS operating system. Almost everything is treated as a file, including:

- **Documents**—These include text files, such as letters or reports, computer source code, or anything else that you write and want to save.
- **Commands**—Most commands are *executable* files; that is, they are files you can execute to run a particular program. For example, the `date` command that you saw in the previous chapter, which executes a program that provides the current date, is an executable file.

- **Devices**—Your terminal, printer, and disk drive(s) are all treated as files.
- **Directories**—A directory is simply a file that contains other files.

The following section explains the commands available for creating, listing, copying, moving, and deleting files. You'll also see how to list the contents of a file and how to determine the nature of a file.

Using File Commands

Each of the commands presented in this section includes an example of how the command is used. Try the examples as you read the text. This practice will make the commands and their respective concepts easier to understand and remember.

Before You Begin

Before you start experimenting with files, make sure that you are in your *home* directory. This is a directory established for you by your system administrator when your account was created. If you perform the tasks shown in the following examples from your home directory, you'll be less likely to create, copy, move, or (worst of all) delete files within portions of the system that other users expect to remain unchanged.

To make certain that you are indeed in your home directory, type the `cd` (change directory) command by itself. This moves you to your home (default) directory. Then type the `pwd` (print working directory) command to display your current location within the filesystem. The directory displayed is your home directory:

```
$ cd
$ pwd
/export/home/username
```

In this example, the user's home directory is `/export/home/username`, where *username* is the name of the user owning the home directory.

Creating a Test File

Use the `touch` command to create an empty file. If a file by the name you specify doesn't already exist, the `touch` command creates an empty file (if the file already exists, `touch` updates the last file access time).

```
$ touch tempfile
$
```

Listing Files (`ls`)

Now list the file with the `ls` command to verify that you've created it:

```
$ ls tempfile
tempfile
```

When you enter the `ls` command by itself, it lists all the files in your current location. If you enter the `ls` command with a specific file name, it lists only that file, if the file exists.

For more information on the `ls(1)` command, refer to the *man Pages(1): User Commands*.

Copying Files (`cp`)

Use the `cp` command to copy `tempfile` to a file called `copyfile`:

```
$ cp tempfile copyfile
$
```

Now try listing both files. Notice that both names end with the characters "file." You can use the *wildcard* character, asterisk (*), to stand for any character or sequence of characters. Therefore, the command `ls *file` should list both `tempfile` and `copyfile` (and any other file in this directory with a name that ends with `file`):

```
$ ls *file
copyfile  tempfile
```

Notice that `copyfile` is listed first. Files are listed in alphabetical order. (Capital letters and numbers precede lowercase letters.)

For detailed information on the `cp(1)` command, refer to the *man Pages(1): User Commands*.

Moving and Renaming Files (mv)

You can both move and rename files using the same command, `mv` (move). In this example, use the `mv` command to rename `tempfile` to `emptyfile`:

```
$ mv tempfile emptyfile
$
```

Now list both files again to verify the change:

```
$ ls *file
copyfile    emptyfile
```

As you can see, `tempfile` is replaced by `emptyfile`.

For more information on the `mv(1)` command, refer to the *man Pages(1): User Commands*.

Deleting Files (rm)

Finally, use the `rm` (remove) command to delete `copyfile`, and verify the result with the `ls` command:

```
$ rm copyfile
$ ls *file
emptyfile
```



Caution – Once you delete a file, it is gone for good. Unless there is a backup copy, the file cannot be restored. Be careful when using the `rm` command, and be particularly careful when using `rm` with the wildcard character (`*`). Files removed with `rm` cannot be recovered.

For more detailed information on the `rm(1)` command, refer to the *man Pages(1): User Commands*.

Displaying File Contents (`more`, `cat`)

Use the `more` command to display the contents of a file. Type `more` followed by the name of the file to be displayed. The contents of the file scrolls down the screen. If the file is longer than one screen, this message appears:

```
--More--(nn%) [Press space to continue, 'q' to quit.]
```

where *nn* is the percentage of the file already displayed.

You can also use the `cat` command to display the contents of a file, but it flashes through the entire file rapidly without pausing. The `cat` (concatenate) command is more often used to join two or more files into one large file, as in this example:

```
$ cat file1 file2 file3 > bigfile
$ ls *file
bigfile
file1
file2
file3
$
```

For further information on the `more(1)` or `cat(1)` commands, refer to the *man Pages(1): User Commands*.

Displaying File Type (file)

Some files, such as binary files and executable files, are not printable and cannot be displayed on the screen. The `file` command can be handy if you're not sure of the file type.

Use the `file` command to show the file type:

```
$ file copyfile
copyfile:  ascii text
```

Directories and Hierarchy

By now you know how to list, copy, rename, and delete files. However, you may be wondering about larger issues. Where are these files located? This section discusses the directory hierarchy. Read the following narrative carefully, and then try the examples in the sections that follow.

Directory Hierarchy

Files are grouped into directories, which are themselves organized in a hierarchy. At the top of the hierarchy is the “root” directory, symbolized by “/”.

As shown in the following example, Figure 3-1, each directory in the file system can have many directories within it. The convention is to distinguish directory levels with the / character. With this in mind, notice that the directory / (root) contains the subdirectories /usr, /bin, /home and /lib, among others. The subdirectory /home contains user1, user2, and user3.

You specify directories (and files within them) by including the names of the directories they're in. This is called a *path name*. For example, the path name for the user3 directory in the illustration above is /home/user3.

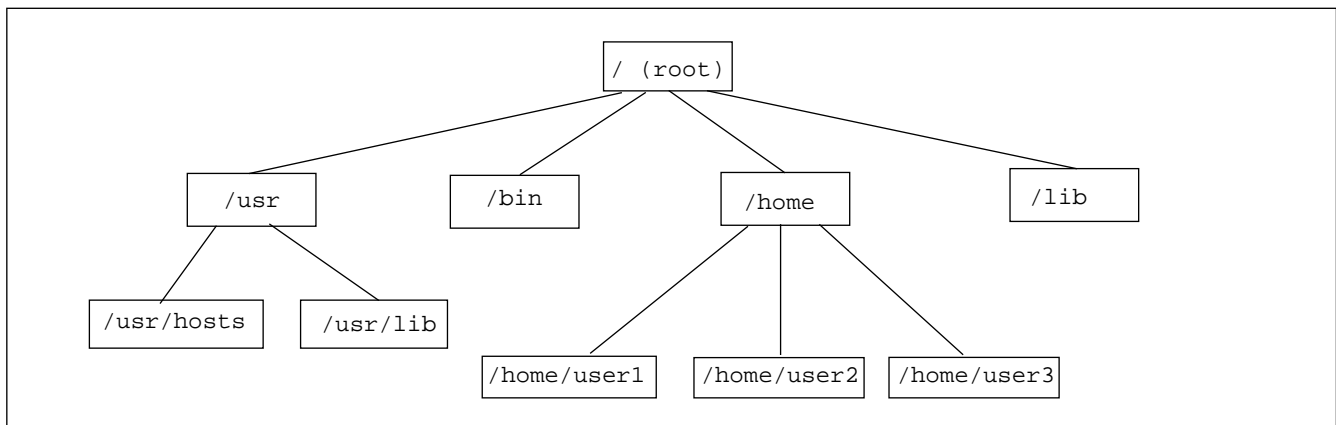


Figure 3-1 File System Hierarchy

All subdirectory and file names within a directory must be unique. However, names within different directories can be the same. For example, the directory `/usr` contains the subdirectory `/usr/lib`. There is no conflict between `/usr/lib` and `/lib` because the path names are different.

Path names for files work exactly like path names for directories. The path name of a file describes that file's place within the file system hierarchy. For example, if the `/home/user2` directory contains a file called `report5`, the path name for this file is `/home/user2/report5`. This shows that the file `report5` is within the directory `user2`, which is within the directory `home`, which is within the root `(/)` directory.

Directories can contain only subdirectories, only files, or both.

Print Working Directory (pwd)

The command `pwd` (print working directory) tells you where you are in the file system hierarchy:

```
$ pwd
/home/user1
```

Your output will look somewhat different from that in the example, as your directory structure will be different. Remember that your working directory is your current location within the file system hierarchy.

Your Home Directory

Every user has a *home* directory. When you first open the Command Tool or Shell Tool window in the OpenWindows environment, your initial location (working directory) is your home directory. This directory is established for you by the system administrator when your account is created.

Change Working Directory (cd)

The `cd` (change directory) command allows you to move around within the file system hierarchy:

```
$ cd /usr/lib
$ pwd
/usr/lib
```

When you type the `cd` command by itself, you return to your home directory. For example, if your home directory was `/home/user1`:

```
$ cd
$ pwd
/home/user1
```

In the C shell, the tilde (`~`) is used as a shortcut for specifying your home directory. For example, you would type the following to change to the subdirectory `music` within your home directory:

```
example% cd ~/music
```

You can also use this shortcut to specify another user's home directory. For example:

```
example% cd ~username
```

where *username* is another user's login name, would change to that user's home directory.

Note – If you are using the Bourne shell, the `~` shortcut will not work.

If you are using the Bourne shell, it may be possible that your system administrator has configured the system so that you can type `$home` to specify your home directory. If this is the case, then typing:

```
$ $home/music
```

changes you to the subdirectory `music` in your home directory. Likewise, typing:

```
$ $homeusername
```

changes you to the specified user's home directory, where *username* represents another user's login name.

The directory immediately "above" a subdirectory is called the *parent directory*. In the preceding example, `/home` is the parent directory of `/home/user1`. The symbol `..` ("dot-dot") represents the parent directory. Therefore, the command `cd ..` changes the working directory to the parent directory, as in this example:

```
$ pwd
/home/user1
$ cd ..
$ pwd
/home
```

Suppose your current working directory is `/home/user1` and you want to work with some files in `/home/user2`. Here is a useful shortcut:

```
$ pwd
/home/user1
$ cd ../user2
$ pwd
/home/user2
```

`../user2` tells the system to look in the parent directory for `user2`. As you can see, this is much easier than typing the entire path name `/home/user2`.

Creating a Directory (mkdir)

It is easy to create a new directory. Type the `mkdir` command followed by the name of the new directory:

```
$ mkdir veggies
$ cd veggies
$ mkdir broccoli
$ cd broccoli
$ pwd
/home/user2/veggies/broccoli
```

Relative Path Names

The full path name of a directory or a file begins with a slash (`/`) and describes the entire directory structure between that file (or directory) and the root directory. However, you can often use a much shorter name which defines the file or directory *relative* to the current working directory.

When you are in a parent directory, you can move to a subdirectory using only the directory name and not the full path name. In the previous example, the command `cd veggies` uses the relative path name of the directory `veggies`. If the current working directory is `/home/user2`, the full path name of this directory is `/home/user2/veggies`.

Try creating several different subdirectories, and then move around within this directory structure. Use both full path names and relative path names, and confirm your location with the `pwd` command.

Moving and Renaming Directories

You rename a directory by moving it to a different name. Use the `mv` command to rename directories:

```
$ pwd
/home/user2/veggies
$ ls
broccoli
$ mv broccoli carrots
$ ls
carrots
```

You can also use `mv` to move a directory to a location within another directory:

```
$ pwd
/home/user2/veggies
$ ls
carrots
$ mv carrots ../veggies2
$ ls ../veggies2
carrots
```

In this example, the directory `carrots` is moved from `veggies` to `veggies2` with the `mv` command.

Copying Directories

Use the `cp -r` command to copy directories and the files they contain:

```
$ cp -r veggies veggies3
$
```

This command copies all files and subdirectories within the directory `veggies` to a new directory `veggies3`. This is a *recursive* copy, as designated by the `-r` option. If you attempt to copy a directory without using this option, you will see an error message.

Removing Directories (rmdir)

To remove an empty directory, use the `rmdir` command as follows:

```
$ rmdir veggies3
$
```

If the directory still contains files or subdirectories, the `rmdir` command will not remove the directory.

Use `rm -r` (adding the *recursive* option `-r` to the `rm` command) to remove a directory and all its contents, including any subdirectories and their files, as follows:

```
$ rm -r veggies3
$
```



Caution – Directories removed with the `rmdir` command *cannot* be recovered, *nor* can directories and their contents removed with the `rm -r` command.

Looking at Differences Between Files (`diff`)

It often happens that different people with access to a file make copies of the file and then edit their copies. `diff` will show you the specific differences between versions of an ASCII file. The command:

```
$ diff leftfile rightfile
```

scans each line in `leftfile` and `rightfile` looking for differences. When it finds a line (or lines) that differ, it determines whether the difference is the result of an addition, a deletion, or a change to the line, and how many lines are affected. It tells you the respective line number(s) in each file, followed by the relevant text from each.

If the difference is the result of an addition, `diff` displays a line of the form:

```
l[,l] a r[,r]
```

where `l` is a line number in `leftfile` and `r` is a line number in `rightfile`.

If the difference is the result of a deletion, `diff` uses a `d` in place of `a`; if it is the result of a change on the line, `diff` uses a `c`.

The relevant lines from both files immediately follow the line number information. Text from `leftfile` is preceded by a left angle bracket (`<`). Text from `rightfile` is preceded by a right angle bracket (`>`).

This example shows two sample files, followed by their `diff` output:

```

$ cat sched.7.15
Week of 7/15

Day:  Time:          Action Item:          Details:

T    10:00          Hardware mtg.         every other week
W    1:30           Software mtg.
T    3:00           Docs. mtg.
F    1:00           Interview

$ cat sched.7.22
Week of 7/22

Day:  Time:          Action Item:          Details:

M    8:30           Staff mtg.            all day
T    10:00          Hardware mtg.         every other week
W    1:30           Software mtg.
T    3:00           Docs. mtg.

$ diff sched.7.15 sched.7.22
1c1
< Week of 7/15
---
> Week of 7/22
4a5
> M    8:30          Staff mtg.            all day
8d8
< F    1:00          Interview

```

If the two files to be compared are identical, there is no output from `diff`.

The `diff(1)` command has many more options than those discussed here. For more information, refer to the *man Pages(1): User Commands*.

Comparing Three Different Files (`diff3`)

If you have three versions of a file that you want to compare at once, use the `diff3` command as follows:

```
$ diff3 file1 file2 file3
```

`diff3` compares three versions of a file and publishes disagreeing ranges of text flagged with these codes:

==== all three files differ

====1 *file1* is different

====2 *file2* is different

====3 *file3* is different

Using `bdiff` on Large Files

If you are comparing very large files, use `bdiff` instead of `diff`. Both programs work in a similar manner:

```
$ bdiff leftfile rightfile
```

Use `bdiff` instead of `diff` for files longer than 3500 lines or so.

Looking Up Files (`find`)

The `find` command searches for files that meet conditions you specify, starting from a directory you name. For example, you might search for filenames that match a certain pattern or that have been modified within a specified time frame.

Unlike most commands, `find` options are several characters long, and the name of the starting directory must precede them on the command line as follows:

```
$ find directory options
```

where *directory* is the name of the starting directory and *options* represents the options for the `find` command.

Each option describes a criterion for selecting a file. A file must meet all criteria to be selected. Thus, the more options you apply, the narrower the field becomes. The `-print` option indicates that you want the results to be displayed. (As described later on, you can use `find` to run commands. You may want `find` to omit the display of selected files in that case.)

The `-name filename` option tells `find` to select files that match *filename*. Here *filename* is taken to be the rightmost component of a file's full path name. For example, the rightmost component of the file `/usr/lib/calendar` is `calendar`. This portion of a file's name is often called its *base name*.

For example, to see which files within the current directory and its subdirectories end in `s`, type:

```
$ find . -name '*s' -print
./programs
./programs/graphics
./programs/graphics/gks
./src/gks
$
```

Other options include:

`-name filename`

Selects files whose rightmost component matches *filename*. Surround *filename* with single quotes if it includes filename substitution patterns.

`-user userid`

Selects files owned by *userid*. *userid* can be either a login name or user ID number.

`-group group`

Selects files belonging to *group*.

`-m time n`

Selects files that have been modified within *n* days.

`-newer checkfile`

Selects files modified more recently than *checkfile*.

You can specify an order of precedence by combining options within (escaped) parentheses (for example, `\(options \)`). Within escaped parentheses, you can use the `-o` flag between options to indicate that `find` should select files that qualify under either category, rather than just those files that qualify under both categories:

```
$ find . \( -name AAA -o -name BBB \) -print
./AAA
./BBB
```

You can invert the sense of an option by prepending an escaped exclamation point. `find` then selects files for which the option does *not* apply:

```
$ find . \!-name BBB -print
./AAA
```

You can also use `find` to apply commands to the files it selects with the

`-exec command '{ }' \;`

option. This option is terminated with an escaped semicolon (`\;`). The quoted braces are replaced with the filenames that `find` selects.

As an example, you can use `find` to automatically remove temporary work files. If you name your temporary files consistently, you can use `find` to seek them out and destroy them wherever they lurk. For example, if you name your temporary files `junk` or `dummy`, this command will find them and remove them:

```
$ find . \( -name junk -o -name dummy \) -exec rm '{}' \;
```

For more information on `find(1)`, refer to the *man Pages(1): User Commands*.

File and Directory Security

Note – Read this section carefully. A clear understanding of file permissions is often important in day-to-day work.

File permissions help to protect files and directories from unauthorized reading and writing. Often you will have files you wish to allow others to read but not change. In other cases, you may have executable files (programs) to share. File permissions allow you to control access to your files.

These are the basic file and directory permission types:

- `r` – *read* permission. A file must be readable to be examined or copied. A directory must be readable for you to list its contents.
- `w` – *write* permission. A file must be writable in order for you to modify it, remove it, or rename it. A directory must be writable in order for you to add or delete files in it.
- `x` – *execute* permission. A file with executable permissions is one you can run, such as a program. A directory must be executable for you to gain access to any of its subdirectories.

There are three categories of users for which you can set permissions:

- **Self** – The user
- **Group** – Other users within the same group as the user (for example, all accounting users). Groups are established and maintained by the system administrator.
- **Others** – Everyone else

Displaying Permissions and Status (`ls -l`)

You have already used the `ls` command to list files. The `ls` command has many options. Use the `-l` option to display a *long* format list. Files and directories are listed in alphabetical order. Figure 3-2 illustrates this method for displaying files:

```

$ pwd
/home/hostname/user2
$ ls -l
total 8
drwxr-xr-x  2 user2          1024 Feb  9 14:22 directory1
-rw-r--r--  1 user2             0 Feb 10 10:20 emptyfile
-rw-r--r--  1 user2       104357 Feb  5 08:20 large-file
drwxr-xr-x  3 user2          1024 Feb 10 11:13 veggies2

```

Permissions	Links	Owner	Size	Date	Time	File or directory name
-------------	-------	-------	------	------	------	------------------------

Figure 3-2 Displaying Permissions and Status

The very first character on the line indicates the file type. A dash (-) is an ordinary file; a `d` indicates a directory, and other characters can indicate other special file types.

The next nine characters indicate the permissions for the file or directory. The nine characters consist of three groups of three, showing the permissions for the owner, the owner's group, and the world, respectively. The permissions for `emptyfile` are `rw-r--r--`, indicating that the owner can read and write this file, everyone can read it, and no one can execute it. The permissions for the directory `veggies2` are `rwxr-xr-x`, indicating that everyone has read and execute permissions, but only the owner can write to it.

In addition to file permissions, the display shows the following information:

- Number of links to this file or directory
- Name of the owner (`user2` in this case)
- Number of bytes (characters) in the file
- Date and time the file or directory was last updated
- Name of the file or directory

Use the `cd` command to move to your home directory, and try the `ls -l` command. Your results will differ from the example, of course.

Now try typing a command such as the following:

```
$ ls -l dirname
```

where *dirname* is the name of an actual directory within your file system. When you give the name of a directory, the `ls -l` command prints information on all the files and directories (if any) within that directory.

Listing “Hidden” Files (ls -a)

There are some files that are not listed by the ordinary `ls` command. These files have names beginning with the character `.` (called “dot”), such as `.cshrc`, `.login` and `.profile`. Use the `ls -a` command to list these dot files:

```
$ ls -a
.
..
.cshrc
.login
.profile
emptyfile
```

Notice that the files beginning with `.` are listed before the other files. There are two special files in this listing: the file `.` is the reference for the current directory, and the file `..` is the reference for the parent directory.

Generally speaking, files that begin with `.` are used by system utilities and are not usually modified by the user. There are a few exceptions to this.

Changing Permissions (`chmod`)

Use the `chmod` command to change permissions for a file or directory. You must be the owner of a file or directory, or have root access, to change its permissions. The general form of the `chmod` command is:

```
chmod permissions name
```

where *permissions* indicates the permissions to be changed and *name* is the name of the affected file or directory.

The permissions can be specified in several ways. Here is one of the forms which is easiest to use:

1. Use one or more letters indicating the users involved:
 - `u` (for the *user*)
 - `g` (for *group*)
 - `o` (for *others*)
 - `a` (for *all* three of the above categories)
2. Indicate whether the permissions are to be added (+) or removed (-).
3. Use one or more letters indicating the permissions involved:
 - `r` (for *read*)
 - `w` (for *write*)
 - `x` (for *execute*)

In the following example, write permission is added to the directory `carrots` for users belonging to the same group (thus, *permissions* is `g+w` and *name* is `carrots`):

```
$ ls -l carrots
drwxr-xr-x  3 user2          1024 Feb 10 11:15 carrots
$ chmod g+w carrots
$ ls -l carrots
drwxrwxr-x  3 user2          1024 Feb 10 11:15 carrots
$
```

As you can see, the hyphen (-) in the set of characters for group is changed to a w as a result of this command.

To make this same directory unreadable and unexecutable by other users outside your group (*permissions* is o-rx), you would enter the following:

```
$ ls -l carrots
drwxrwxr-x  3 user2          1024 Feb 10 11:15 carrots
$ chmod o-rx carrots
$ ls -l carrots
drwxrwx---  3 user2          1024 Feb 10 11:15 carrots
$
```

Now, the r (for read) and the x (for execute) in the set of characters for other users are both changed to hyphens (-).

When you create a new file or directory, the system automatically assigns permissions.

In general, the default settings for new files are:

```
-rw-r--r--
```

and for new directories are:

```
drwxr-xr-x
```

So, to make a new file `turnip` executable by its owner (user2), you would enter the following:

```
$ ls -l turnip
-rw-r--r--  3 user2          1024 Feb 10 12:27 turnip
$ chmod u+x turnip
$ ls -l turnip
-rwxr--r--  3 user2          1024 Feb 10 12:27 turnip
$
```

If you want to affect all three categories of users at once, use the `a` option. To make a new file `garlic` executable by everyone, you would enter the following:

```
$ ls -l garlic
-rw-r--r-- 3 user2          1024 Feb 10 11:31 garlic
$ chmod a+x garlic
$ ls -l garlic
-rwxr-xr-x 3 user2          1024 Feb 10 11:31 garlic
$
```

As a result, the `x` indicator appears in all three categories.

You can also change permissions for groups of files and directories using the `*` wildcard character. For example, you would enter the following to change the permissions for all the files in the current directory `veggies` so that the files can be written by you alone:

```
$ pwd
/home/user2/veggies
$ ls -l
-rwxrwxrwx 3 user2          21032 Feb 12 10:31 beats
-rwxrwxrwx 2 user2           68 Feb 10 11:09 corn
-rwxrwxrwx 3 user2         12675 Feb 08 09:31 garlic
-rwxrwxrwx 1 user2          1024 Feb 14 16:38 onions
$ chmod go-w *
$ ls -l
-rwxr-xr-x 3 user2          21032 Feb 12 10:31 beats
-rwxr-xr-x 2 user2           68 Feb 10 11:09 corn
-rwxr-xr-x 3 user2         12675 Feb 08 09:31 garlic
-rwxr-xr-x 1 user2          1024 Feb 14 16:38 onions
$
```

The `pwd` command is included in this example to illustrate that the directory on which you perform this `chmod` operation must be the current directory.

Setting Absolute Permissions

Up to this point, the discussion on permissions has only included using the `chmod` command to change permissions *relative* to their current settings. Using a different form of the `chmod` command, which applies numeric codes to specify permissions, you can set the permissions for a file or directory *absolutely*.

The syntax for this usage of the `chmod` command is:

```
chmod numcode name
```

where *numcode* is the numeric code and *name* is the name of the file or directory for which you are changing permissions.

The complete numeric code consists of three numbers. One number is used for each of the three categories: user, group, and others. For example the following command sets absolute read, write, and execute permissions for the user and the group, and execute permissions only for others:

```
$ chmod 771 garlic
```

Table 3-1 illustrates how the permissions described for `garlic` are represented by the code `771`.

Table 3-1 Permissions for `garlic`

Permission	User	Group	Others
Read	4	4	0
Write	2	2	0
Execute	1	1	1
Total	7	7	1

Each of the columns in Table 3-1 represents one of the categories: user, group, and others. To set read permissions, you add 4 to the appropriate column. To set write permissions, you add 2. To add execute permissions, you add 1. The total in all three columns in the last row of the table is the complete numeric code.

The following is another example of this method for setting absolute permissions, with the `ls -l` command included to demonstrate the results:

```
$ ls -l onion
-rw-r--r-- 3 user2          1024 Feb 10 11:46 onion
$ chmod 755 onion
$ ls -l onion
-rwxr-xr-x 3 user2          1024 Feb 10 11:48 onion
$
```

The permissions for the file `onion` are set so that the user can read, write, and execute; group members can read and execute; and others can also read and execute. Table 3-2 provides the breakdown of the numeric code used to set the permissions for `onion`.

Table 3-2 Permissions for `onion`

Permission	User	Group	Others
Read	4	4	4
Write	2	0	0
Execute	1	1	1
Total	7	5	5

Of course, to provide read, write, and execute permissions for the file `cabbage` to yourself, your group, and all other users, you would enter the following:

```
$ ls -l cabbage
-rw-r--r-- 3 user2          1024 Feb 10 11:51 cabbage
$ chmod 777 cabbage
$ ls -l cabbage
-rwxrwxrwx 3 user2          1024 Feb 10 11:53 cabbage
$
```

Table 3-3 provides the breakdown for this example.

Table 3-3 Permissions for cabbage

Permission	User	Group	Others
Read	4	4	4
Write	2	2	2
Execute	1	1	1
Total	7	7	7

The numeric code 777 represents the maximum level of permissions you can provide.

Similar to changing relative permissions, you can also use the wildcard character * to set absolute permissions for all in the files in the current directory. For example, to set absolute permissions for all files in the current directory `veggies` so that you have read, write, and execute permissions; your group has read and execute permissions; and all other users have execute permissions only, you would enter the following:

```

$ pwd
/home/user2/veggies
$ ls -l
-rwxrwxrwx 3 user2          21032 Feb 12 10:31 beats
-rwxrwxrwx 2 user2           68 Feb 10 11:09 corn
-rwxrwxrwx 3 user2       12675 Feb 08 09:31 garlic
-rwxrwxrwx 1 user2         1024 Feb 14 16:38 onions
$ chmod 751 *
$ ls -l
-rwxr-x--x 3 user2          21032 Feb 12 10:31 beats
-rwxr-x--x 2 user2           68 Feb 10 11:09 corn
-rwxr-x--x 3 user2       12675 Feb 08 09:31 garlic
-rwxr-x--x 1 user2         1024 Feb 14 16:38 onions
$

```

The `pwd` command is included in this example to illustrate that the directory on which you perform this operation must be the current directory. The `ls -l` command is shown only to illustrate the changes in permissions. When setting absolute permissions, it's not necessary to know what the permissions are currently.

For more information on the `chmod(1)` command, refer to the *man Pages(1): User Commands*.

Searching Files



This chapter describes how to search directories and files for keywords and strings using the SunOS command `grep`.

Searching for Patterns with `grep`

To search for a particular character string in a file, use the `grep` command. The basic syntax of the `grep` command is:

```
$ grep string file
```

where *string* is the word or phrase you want to find, and *file* is the file to be searched.

Note – A *string* is one or more characters; a single letter is a string, as is a word or a sentence. Strings may include “white space,” punctuation, and invisible (control) characters.

For example, to find Edgar Allan Poe’s telephone extension, type `grep`, all or part of his name, and the file containing the information:

```
$ grep Poe extensions
Edgar Allan Poe      x72836
$
```

Note that more than one line may match the pattern you give:

```
$ grep Allan extensions
David Allan          x76438
Edgar Allan Poe     x72836
$ grep Al extensions
Louisa May Alcott   x74236
David Allan          x76438
Edgar Allan Poe     x72836
$
```

`grep` is case-sensitive; that is, you must match the pattern with respect to uppercase and lowercase letters:

```
$ grep allan extensions
$ grep Allan extensions
David Allan          x76438
Edgar Allan Poe     x72836
$
```

Note that `grep` failed in the first try because none of the entries began with a lowercase “a.”

`grep` as a *Filter*

`grep` is very often used as a “filter” with other commands. It allows you to filter out useless information from the output of commands. To use `grep` as a filter, you must pipe the output of the command through `grep`. The symbol for pipe is “|”.

The following example displays files ending in “.ps” that were created in the month of May:

```
$ ls -l *.ps | grep May
```

The first part of this command line,

```
ls -l *.ps
```

produces a list of files:

```
$ ls -l *.ps
-rw-r--r-- 1 elvis      7228 Apr 22 15:07 change.ps
-rw-r--r-- 1 elvis      2356 May 22 12:56 clock.ps
-rw-r--r-- 1 elvis      1567 Jun 22 12:56 cmdtool.ps
-rw-r--r-- 1 elvis     10198 Jun 22 15:07 command.ps
-rw-r--r-- 1 elvis      5644 May 22 15:07 buttons.ps
$
```

The second part,

```
| grep May
```

pipes that list through `grep`, looking for the pattern `May`:

```
$ ls -l *.ps | grep May
-rw-r--r-- 1 elvis      2356 May 22 12:56 clock.ps
-rw-r--r-- 1 elvis      5644 May 22 15:07 buttons.ps
$
```

grep with Multi-Word Strings

To find a pattern that is more than one word long, enclose the string with single or double quotation marks:

```
$ grep "Louisa May" extensions
Louisa May Alcott      x74236
$
```

`grep` can search for a string in groups of files. When it finds a pattern that matches in more than one file, it prints the name of the file, followed by a colon, then the line matching the pattern:

```
$ grep ar *
actors:Humphrey Bogart
alaska:Alaska is the largest state in the United States.
wilde:book. Books are well written or badly written.
$
```

Searching for Lines without a Certain String

To search for all the lines of a file that *don't* contain a certain string, use the `-v` option to `grep`. The following example shows how to find all of the lines in the user `medici`'s home directory files that don't contain the letter `e`:

```
$ ls
actors    alaska    hinterland  tutors    wilde
$ grep -v e *
actors:Mon Mar 14 10:00 PST 1936
wilde:That is all.
$
```

More on grep

You can also use the `grep` command to search for targets defined as patterns using *regular expressions*. Regular expressions consist of letters and numbers, in addition to characters with special meaning to `grep`. These special characters, called *metacharacters*, also have special meaning to the system and need to be quoted or escaped. Whenever you use a `grep` regular expression at the command prompt, surround it with quotes, or escape metacharacters (such as `&` `!` `.` `*` `$` `?` and `\`) with a backslash (`\`).

- A caret (`^`) indicates the beginning of the line. So the command:

```
$ grep '^b' list
```

finds any line in the file `list` starting with "b."

- A dollar-sign (\$) indicates the end of the line. The command:

```
$ grep 'b$' list
```

displays any line in which “b” is the last character on the line. And the command:

```
$ grep '^b$' list
```

displays any line in `list` where “b” is the *only* character on the line.

- Within a regular expression, dot (.) finds any single character. So the command:

```
$ grep 'an.' list
```

would match any three characters with “an” as the first two, including “any,” “and,” “management,” and “plan” (because spaces count, too).

- When an asterisk (*) follows a character, `grep` interprets it as “zero or more instances of that character.” When the asterisk follows a regular expression, `grep` interprets it as “zero or more instances of characters matching the pattern.”

Because it includes zero occurrences, usage of the asterisk is a little non-intuitive. Suppose you want to find all words with the letters “qu” in them. Typing:

```
$ grep 'qu*' list
```

will work as expected. However, if you wanted to find all words containing the letter “n,” you would have to type:

```
$ grep 'nn*' list
```

If you wanted to find all words containing the pattern “nn,” you would have to type:

```
$ grep 'nn*' list
```

You may want to try this to see what happens otherwise.

- To match zero or more occurrences of *any* character in `list`, type:

```
$ grep .* list
```

Searching for Metacharacters

Suppose you want to find lines in the text that have a dollar sign (\$) in them. Preceding the dollar sign in the regular expression with a backslash (\) tells `grep` to ignore (escape) its special meaning. This is true for the other metacharacters (& ! . * ? and \ itself) as well.

For example, the expression

```
$ grep ^\.
```

matches lines starting with a period, and is especially useful when searching for `nroff` or `troff` formatting requests (which begin with a period).

The following table, Table 4-1, provides a list of the more commonly used search pattern elements you can use with `grep`.

Table 4-1 `grep` Search Pattern Elements

Character	Matches
<code>^</code>	The beginning of a text line
<code>\$</code>	The end of a text line
<code>.</code>	Any single character
<code>[...]</code>	Any single character in the bracketed list or range
<code>[^...]</code>	Any character not in the list or range
<code>*</code>	Zero or more occurrences of the preceding character or regular expression
<code>.*</code>	Zero or more occurrences of any single character
<code>\</code>	Escapes special meaning of next character

Note that these search characters can also be used in `vi` text editor searches.

Single or Double Quotes on Command Lines

As shown earlier, you use quotation marks to surround text that you want to be interpreted as one word. For example, you would type the following to use `grep` to search all files for the phrase “dang it, boys”:

```
$ grep "dang it, boys" *
```

Single quotation marks (`'`) can also be used to group multiword phrases into single units. Single quotation marks also make sure that certain characters, such as `$`, are interpreted literally. (The `history` metacharacter `!` is always interpreted as such, even inside quotation marks, unless you escape it with a backslash.) In any case, it is a good idea to escape characters such as `&` `!` `$` `?` `.` `;` and `\` when you want them taken as ordinary typographical characters.

For example, if you type:

```
$ grep $ list
```

you will see *all* the lines in `list`. However, if you type:

```
$ grep '\$' list
```

you will see only those lines with the “\$” character in them.

For more information on the `grep(1)` command, refer to the *man Pages(1): User Commands*.

Passwords, Processes, and Disk Storage

5 

SunOS provides a wealth of commands for doing a number of system tasks on the command line. This chapter describes how to set a password, how to list the processes running on your machine, how to kill unwanted processes, and how to display the amount of space being used on your disk.

Using a Password

For the sake of your system's security, SunOS requires the use of a password for your system. Changing your password several times a year helps to ensure that you are the only user with easy access to your account. If you believe someone has used your account without your permission, change your password immediately.

When choosing a password, keep the following in mind:

- Choose a password that you can remember without writing it down. A password that you can't remember is worse than one that is too easily guessed.
- Choose a password that is at least six characters long and contains at least one number.
- Don't use your own name or initials or the name or initials of your spouse.
- Don't use the names of pets or objects common to your interests.
- Don't use all capital letters.

- If you have more than one account, don't use the same password for every account.
- Although you can use any character in your password, some characters, such as Ctrl-C, Ctrl-Z, Ctrl-U, Ctrl-S, Esc, Tab, and in some cases # and @ can be interpreted by the terminal as signals. These characters should be avoided. The terminal may interpret these as signals rather than text characters, and this would preclude you from properly typing in your password.

Changing Your Password

To change your personal password, type the `passwd` command:

```
$ passwd
Changing password for hankw on worker
Old password:
New password:
Retype new password:
$
```

- 1. When the system prompts you for `Old Password:`, type your current password.**
(If no password is currently assigned to your account, the system will skip the `Old Password:` prompt.) Note that the system does not echo (display) your password on the screen. This prevents other users from discovering your password.
- 2. When the system prompts you for `New Password:`, type the password you've decided on.**
Again, the password you type does not echo on the screen.
- 3. At the final prompt, `Retype new password:`, type your new password a second time.**
This is to verify that you typed exactly what you intended to type.

If you don't enter your password precisely the way you did at the previous prompt, the system refuses to change your password and responds with `Sorry`. If this happens repeatedly, contact your system administrator to get a new password.

Note – Passwords containing fewer than six characters are not allowed. Also, a new password must differ from the old password by at least three characters.

Password Aging

If your system is using password aging (implemented with options to the `passwd` command), your password may have either a maximum, or a maximum *and* minimum lifespan. The lifespan of your password is set by your system administrator.

When the maturity date (or maximum age) of your password is reached, you are prompted to change your password. This occurs when you log in. The following is displayed:

```
Your password has expired. Choose a new one.
```

The system then automatically runs the `passwd` program and prompts you for a new password.

If, for example, the *minimum* age of your password has been set for two weeks, and you try to change your password before that time has elapsed, the following is displayed:

```
Sorry, less than 2 weeks since the last change.
```

To view aging information for your password, use the `-d` option to the `passwd` command:

```
$ passwd -d
username 2-14-92 14 60
```

The display shows, in order, the date the current password was created, the minimum age, and the maximum age. (This information appears only if password aging has been implemented.)

For more information on `passwd(1)` and password aging, refer to the *man Pages(1): User Commands*.

Processes and PIDs

After each command is interpreted by the system, an independent *process*, with a unique process identification number (PID), is created to perform the command. The system uses the PID to track the current status of each process.

What Commands Are Running Now (ps)

Use the `ps` command to see what processes are currently running. In addition to showing the *process identification number* (listed under `PID`) for each process you own (created as a result of a command you typed), `ps` also shows you the *terminal* from which it was started (`TTY`), the *cpu time* it has used so far (`TIME`), and the *command* it is performing (`COMMAND`).

Adding the `-l` option to the `ps` command displays a variety of other information about the processes currently running, including the *state* of each process (listed under `S`). The codes used to show this are as follows:

- `O` - Process is running on a processor.
- `S` - Sleeping: Process is waiting for an event to complete.
- `R` - Runnable: Process is on run queue.
- `I` - Idle: Process is being created.
- `Z` - Zombie state: Process terminated and parent not waiting.
- `T` - Traced: Process stopped by a signal because parent is tracing it.
- `X` - `SXBRK` state: Process is waiting for more primary memory.

Note that while `ps` is running, things can change. Since the `ps` command gives you only a snapshot of what's going on, it's only true for a split second after you type the command. The information may not be completely accurate by the time you see it.

The `ps(1)` command has more options than those covered here. Refer to the *man Pages(1): User Commands*.

Terminating Processes (`kill`)

The `kill` command provides you with a direct way to stop command processes that you no longer want. This is particularly useful when you make a mistake typing a command that takes a long time to run.

To terminate a process:

1. Type `ps` to find out the PID(s) for the process(es).
2. Type `kill` followed by the PID(s).

The following example illustrates this procedure:

```
$ ps
PID    TTY    TIME    COMMAND
1291   co     0:12    -bin/csh (csh)
3250   p0     0:00    ps
1286   p1     0:05    -bin/csh (csh)
3248   p1     0:05    vi commands
$ kill 1291
[1] Terminated -bin/csh/ (csh)
$
```

Note that a faster way of determining the right PID is to pipe `ps` output through `grep` as follows:

```
$ ps | grep commandname
```

where *commandname* is the name of the command process you want to stop.

If you need to forcibly terminate a process, you can use the `-9` option to the `ps` command as follows:

```
$ kill -9 PID#
```

where *PID#* is the process identification number of the process you want to stop.

Managing Disk Storage

Since space on the disk is a limited resource, it is a very good idea to keep track of the space currently in use.

Displaying Disk Usage (`df -k`)

`df -k` shows you the amount of space currently in use on each disk that is mounted (directly accessible) to your system. Just type:

```
$ df -k
```

to see the capacity of each disk mounted on your system, the amount available, and the percentage of space already in use.

File systems at or above 90 percent of capacity should be cleared of unnecessary files. You can do this either by moving them to a disk or tape that is less full, using `cp` to copy them and `rm` to remove them, or you can simply remove them outright. Of course, you should only perform these kinds of “housekeeping” chores on files that you own.

Displaying Directory Usage (`du`)

You can use `du` to display the usage of a directory and all its subdirectories in 512-byte blocks; that is, units of 512 bytes or characters.

`du` shows you the disk usage in each subdirectory. To get a list of subdirectories in a filesystem, `cd` to the pathname associated with that filesystem, and run the following pipeline:

```
$ du | sort -r -n
```

This pipeline, which uses the *reverse* and *numeric* options of the `sort` command, pinpoints large directories. Use `ls -l` to examine the size (in bytes) and modification times of files within each directory. Old files, or text files over 100 Kbytes, often warrant storage offline.

Using the `vi` Editor



`vi` (pronounced “vee-eye,” short for visual display editor) is the standard SunOS text editor. Since `vi` is not window-based, this multipurpose editor can be used on any kind of terminal to edit a wide range of file types.

You can enter and edit text with `vi`, but it is not a word-processor. It was not created to process formatted text in the familiar manner of a commercial word-processor. To produce formatted printouts, `vi` relies on a typesetting emulation program, such as `nroff`, `troff`, or `ditroff`. These programs allow you to format `vi` text by inserting codes that are then interpreted by the emulator.

`vi` contains a huge array of commands, many of which have overlapping functions. At first, it’s quite normal for new users to feel overloaded by this. The purpose of this chapter, however, is to provide you with an overview of the most essential `vi` commands. As you begin to use `vi`, you’ll find that it is an extremely powerful text editor, and that it may take you a while to become proficient.

Note that there is a read-only version of `vi` called `view`. When you open a file with `view`, you can use `vi` commands, but you cannot write (or save) your changes. This allows you or others to read a `vi` file without accidentally changing it.

Starting vi

In the sub-sections that follow, you'll learn how to start `vi`, enter text in a file, save (write) the file, and quit `vi`. You'll also create a practice file that you'll use for the rest of this chapter.

Creating a File

Start `vi` and edit the file `paint` as shown in this example:

```
$ vi paint
```

If `paint` already exists, `vi` will open the existing file; if this is a new file, `vi` will create it. For the purposes of this example, `paint` should be a new file.

The `vi` editing screen appears in a moment:

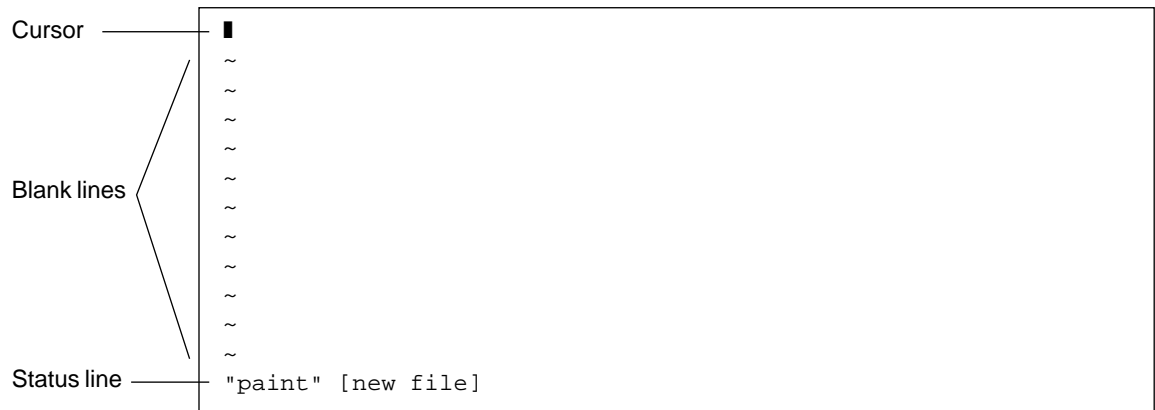


Figure 6-1 The `vi` Editing Screen

The cursor appears in the upper left corner of the screen. Blank lines are indicated by a vertical series of tildes (~).

Note that you can also start `vi` without specifying a file name by just typing `vi`. You can then name the file later when you exit `vi`.

The Status Line

The last line of the screen, called the *status line*, shows the name of the file and the number of lines and characters in the file. When you create a new file, as is the case with our example, the status line indicates that it's a new file.

The Two Modes of vi

There are two modes of operation in `vi`: entry mode and command mode. You use *entry mode* to enter text into a file, while *command mode* is used to enter commands that perform specific `vi` functions. Command mode is the default mode for `vi`.

Since `vi` doesn't indicate which mode you're currently in, distinguishing between command mode and entry mode is probably the single greatest cause of confusion among new `vi` users. However, if you remember just a few basic concepts from the beginning, you should be able to avoid most of the usual "vi stress."

When you first open a `vi` file, it's always in command mode. Before you can enter text in the file, you must type one of the `vi` entry commands, such as `i` ("insert"), to insert text *at* the current cursor location, or `a` ("append"), to insert text *after* the current cursor location. (These and other `vi` entry commands are covered in greater detail later in this chapter.)

Whenever you want to return `vi` to command mode, press Esc. If you're not sure which mode `vi` is presently in, simply press Esc to make sure it's in command mode and continue from there. If you press Esc while `vi` is already in command mode, the system beeps and the screen flashes, but no harm is done.

Entry Mode

To enter text in the sample file `paint`, type the `vi` "insert" command `i`. This takes `vi` out of command mode and puts it into entry mode.

Now type a few short lines of text, ending every line with a Return. Characters you type appear to the left of the cursor and push any existing characters to the right. For the moment, you can correct your mistakes by backspacing and retyping a line before you press Return. Later you will learn how to edit the text you entered.

When you finish entering text in `paint`, press `Esc` to return to command mode. The cursor moves back onto the last character entered. Now you can enter more `vi` commands.

If `vi` seems to act unpredictably, make sure that you are not in “Caps Lock” mode, which would cause your entries to be all capital letters. On some systems, the `F1` key (which is usually located next to the `Esc` key) acts as the Caps Lock. Pressing this key instead of `Esc` is a common error.

Note – Occasionally you may need to instruct `vi` to clear or redraw the screen to eliminate, for example, extraneous system messages. To redraw the screen, enter command mode and press `Ctrl-L`. This is similar to the OpenWindows Refresh command.

Command Mode

When you open a file with `vi`, you are in command mode. In this mode, you can enter commands to implement a wide range of functions. Most `vi` commands consist of one or two letters and an optional number. Usually, there are upper and lowercase versions of commands that perform related but different functions. As an example, typing `a` appends the file to the right of the cursor, while typing `A` appends the file at the *end* of the line.

Most `vi` commands don't require that you press `Return` to execute them. Commands beginning with a colon (`:`), however, do require that you press `Return` after the command. Some discussions of the `vi` editor refer to commands preceded with a colon as a third, and uniquely separate mode of `vi`, *last-line mode*. This is because when you type the colon while in command mode, the colon and the remainder of what is typed appear on the bottom line of the screen. For the purpose of this discussion, however, all `vi` commands are initiated from command mode.

Commands preceded with a colon are actually `ex` commands. `vi` and `ex` are two separate interfaces to the same text editing program. While `vi` is a screen-oriented interface, `ex` is a line-oriented interface. The full set of `ex` commands is available from within `vi`. When you press the colon, you are actually switching to the line-oriented, `ex` interface. This allows you to perform many file manipulation commands without ever leaving `vi`. See “Using `ex` Commands,” in this chapter, for further information.

Ending a Session

When you edit a file in `vi`, your changes are not made directly to the file. Instead, they are applied to a copy of the file that `vi` creates in a temporary memory space called the *buffer*. The permanent disk copy of the file is modified only when you *write* (save) the contents of the buffer.

This arrangement has its good and bad points. On the one hand, it means that you can quit a file and discard all the changes that you have made during an editing session, leaving the disk copy intact. On the other hand, you could lose the (unsaved) contents of the work buffer if the system crashes. (People on remote terminals connected by phone lines are especially vulnerable to unplanned interruptions.)

The best policy is to save your work frequently, especially when making substantive changes.



Caution – Although it's possible to run multiple, simultaneous `vi` sessions on one file, it is not a good idea. Great confusion could result when you try to determine which changes have been written to the file and which changes have been overwritten from a simultaneous session.

Saving Changes and Quitting `vi`

`vi` is rich in more or less synonymous commands that control saving the buffer contents to a file and quitting `vi`. These commands give you the option of saving, saving-and-quitting, or quitting-without-saving.

Saving

Save the contents of the buffer (write the buffer to the file on disk) by typing:

```
:w
```

followed by Return.

Saving and Quitting

Save and quit by typing:

```
:wq
```

followed by Return. Alternatively, type ZZ.

Note that the command ZZ is neither preceded by a colon nor followed by Return.

Quitting Without Saving

When you've made no changes to a file and simply want to quit, type:

```
:q
```

followed by Return. If you have made changes, vi will not let you quit with :q. Instead, it will display the message, No write since last change (:quit! overrides).

If you do not want to save your changes, type:

```
:q!
```

followed by Return.

Printing a File

Once you have quit a `vi` file, you can print the file with the following command:

```
$ lp filename
```

where *filename* is the name of the `vi` file to be printed. This command prints the file to your default printer. The file is printed without any formatting, line for line, just as it appears on the screen. See Chapter 8, “Using Printers,” for more information on printer commands.

Basic `vi` Commands

The following sections explain several categories of `vi` commands. These include:

- Moving around in a file
- Inserting text
- Changing and substituting text
- Undoing changes to text
- Deleting text
- Copying and moving text
- Repeating commands

Moving Around in a File

In the previous sections you learned how to create, save, print, and exit a `vi` file. Now that you have created a file, you’ll need to understand the concepts required to navigate within it. Open your practice file now, and try out each of the commands discussed in this section.

Moving the Cursor

When you start `vi`, the cursor is in the upper left corner of the `vi` screen. In command mode, you can move the cursor with a number of keyboard commands. Certain letter keys, the arrow keys, and the Return key, Back Space (or Delete) key, and the Space Bar can all be used to move the cursor when you’re in command mode.

Note – Most `vi` commands are case-sensitive; the “same” command typed in lowercase and uppercase characters could have radically different effects.

Moving with Arrow Keys

If your machine is equipped with arrow keys, try these now. You should be able to move the cursor freely about the screen using combinations of the up, down, right, and left arrow keys. Notice that you can only move the cursor across already existing text or input spaces.

If you’re using `vi` from a remote terminal, the arrow keys may not work correctly. This will depend on your terminal emulator. If the arrow keys don’t work in your case, you can use the following substitutes:

- To move left, press `h`.
- To move right, press `l`.
- To move down, press `j`.
- To move up, press `k`.

Moving One Word

Press `w` (“word”) to move the cursor to the right one word at a time.

Press `b` (“back”) to move the cursor to the left one word at a time.

Press `W` or `B` to move the cursor past the adjacent punctuation to the next or previous blank space.

Press `e` (“end”) to move the cursor to the last character of the current word.

Moving to Start or End of Line

Press `^` to move the cursor to the start of the current line.

Press `$` to move the cursor to the end of the current line.

Moving Down One Line

Press the Return key to move the cursor to the beginning of the next line down.

Moving Left

Press the Back Space key to move the cursor one character to the left.

Moving Right

Press the Space Bar to move the cursor one character to the right.

Moving to the Top

Press H (“high”) to move the cursor to the top of the screen.

Moving to the Middle

Press M (“middle”) to move the cursor to the middle of the screen.

Moving to the Bottom

Press L (“low”) to move the cursor to the bottom of the screen.

Paging and Scrolling

If you move down when the cursor is at the bottom of the screen, or move up when the cursor is at the top of the screen, you will see the text scroll up or down. This can be an effective way to display more text in a very short file, but it can be tedious to move this way through a long file.

You may have noticed that moving the cursor either past the bottom or past the top of the screen has the effect of scrolling text up or down. This works for a very short file, but it is a tedious way to move through a long file.

You can page or scroll backward or forward through a file, a screen or a half-screen at a time. (To try out these commands on `paint`, you might want to add text so you have a longer file to work with.)

Note that there is a fundamental difference between paging and scrolling. Scrolling actually scrolls the cursor up or down through the text *a line at a time*, as though it were on a paper scroll. Paging moves the cursor up or down through the text *a screenful at a time*. On a fast system, you might not notice the difference. However, if you’re working from a remote terminal or in some other situation where your system is running slower than usual, this difference can become painfully apparent.

Page Forward One Screen

To scroll forward (move down) one screenful, press Ctrl-F. (Hold down the Control key and press the F key.) The cursor moves to the upper left corner of the new screen.

Scroll Forward One-Half Screen

To scroll forward one half of a screen, press Ctrl-D.

Page Backward One Screen

To scroll backward (i.e., move up) one screenful, press Ctrl-B.

Scroll Backward One-Half Screen

To scroll backward one half of a screen, press Ctrl-U.

Inserting Text

`vi` provides many commands for inserting text. This section introduces you to the most useful of these commands. Note that each of these commands places `vi` in entry mode. To use any of these commands, you must first be in command mode. Remember to press Esc to make sure you are in command mode.

Append

Type `a` (append) to insert text to the *right* of the cursor. Experiment by moving the cursor anywhere on a line and typing `a`, followed by the text you want to add. Press Esc when you're finished.

Type `A` to add text to the *end* of a line. To see how this works, position the cursor anywhere on a text line and type `A`. The cursor will move to the end of the line, where you can type your additions. Press Esc when you're done.

Insert

Insert text to the left of the cursor by typing `i` from command mode.

Type `I` to insert text at the beginning of a line. (The command will move the cursor from any position on that line.) Again, as with all the commands in this section, press `Esc` to return to command mode after entering the desired text.

Open Line

Use these commands to open new lines, either above or below the current cursor position.

Type `o` to open a line *below* the current cursor position. To experiment, type `o` followed by a bit of text. You can enter several lines of text if you like. Press `Esc` when you are finished.

Type `O` to open a line *above* the current cursor position.

Changing Text

Changing text involves substituting one section of text for another. `vi` has several ways to do this, depending on circumstances.

Changing a Word

To replace a word, position the cursor at the beginning of the word to be replaced. Type `cw`, followed by the new word. To finish, press `Esc`.

To change *part* of a word, place the cursor on the word, to the *right* of the portion to be saved. Type `cw`, enter the correction, and press `Esc`.

Changing a Line

To replace a line, position the cursor anywhere on the line and type `cc`. The line disappears, leaving a blank line for your new text (which can be of any length). Press `Esc` to finish.

Changing Part of a Line

To replace part of a line, place the cursor to the *right* of the portion to be saved. Type `C`, enter the correction, and press `Esc`. This changes the portion of the line from the current cursor position to the end of the line.

Substituting Character(s)

To substitute one or more characters for the character under the cursor, type `s`, followed by the new text. Press `Esc` to return to command mode.

Replacing One Character

Use this command to replace the character highlighted by the cursor with another character. Position the cursor over the character and type `r`, followed by just one replacement character. After the substitution, `vi` automatically returns to command mode (there's no need to press `Esc`).

Transposing Characters

Correcting transposed characters takes just two keystrokes in `vi`. Suppose you find that you've typed "teh" when you meant to enter "the". Make the correction by putting the cursor over the first letter to be moved (in this case, e), and then type `xp`. The e and h will trade places – and `vi` will automatically return to command mode.

Breaking or Joining Lines

To break a line without affecting text, move the cursor to a space where you want the line to break and type `r` (for "replace") followed by `Return`. Note that if you type `r` with the cursor on a character and then press `Return`, that character will be replaced by the `Return`.

To join two lines, place the cursor on the upper line and type an uppercase `J`. (There's no need to press `Esc` after typing `J`.)

Undoing Changes

When editing text and making changes to a `vi` file, there will no doubt be times when you'll wish that you had not changed something. `vi`'s undo commands allow you to back up one operation and continue on from there.

Undoing the Previous Command

If you make a mistake in `vi` or if you just change your mind once an operation is completed, you can undo your last command by pressing `u` immediately after the command. (There's no need to press `Esc` after typing `u`.) Pressing `u` a *second* time undoes the undo.

Undoing Changes to a Line

Type `U` to undo all changes you've made to a line. This command works only if you haven't moved the cursor off the line. (There's no need to press `Esc` after typing `U`.)

Deleting Text

These `vi` commands delete the character, word, or line you indicate. `vi` stays in command mode, so any subsequent text insertions must be preceded by additional commands to enter entry mode.

Deleting One Character

To delete one character, position the cursor over the character to be deleted and type `x`.

The `x` command also deletes the space the character occupied—when a letter is removed from the middle of a word, the remaining letters will close up, leaving no gap. You can also delete blank spaces in a line with the `x` command.

To delete one character before (to the left of) the cursor, type `X` (uppercase).

Deleting a Word or Part of a Word

To delete a word, position the cursor at the beginning of the word and type `dw`. The word and the space it occupied are removed.

To delete part of a word, position the cursor on the word to the *right* of the part to be saved. Type `dw` to delete the rest of the word.

Deleting a Line

To delete a line, position the cursor anywhere on the line and type `dd`. The line and the space it occupied are removed.

Deleting Part of a Line

You can also delete part of a line.

To delete everything to the *right* of the cursor, position the cursor to the right of the part of the line you want to save, and type `D`.

To delete everything to the *left* of the cursor, position the cursor to the right of the part of the line you want to delete and type `d0` (d-zero).

Deleting to the End of the File

To delete everything from the current line to the end of the file, type `dG`. This also deletes the line on which the cursor is located.

Deleting from Beginning of File

To delete everything from the beginning of the file to the current line, type `d1G`. This also deletes the line on which the cursor is located.

Copying and Moving Text — Yank, Delete, and Put

Many word-processors allow you to “copy and paste” and “cut and paste” lines of text. The `vi` editor also includes these features. The `vi` command-mode equivalent of “copy and paste” is *yank and put*; the equivalent of “cut and paste” is *delete and put*.

The methods for copying or moving small blocks of text in `vi` involves using a combination of the `yank`, `delete`, and `put` commands.

Copying Lines

To copy a line requires two commands: `yy` or `Y` (“yank”) and either `p` (“put below”) or `P` (“put above”). Note that `Y` does the same thing as `yy`.

To yank one line, position the cursor anywhere on the line and type `yy`. Now move the cursor to the line above where you want the yanked line to be put (copied), and type `p`. A copy of the yanked line will appear in a new line *below* the cursor.

To place the yanked line in a new line *above* the cursor, type `P`.

The `yy` command works well with a count: to yank 11 lines, for example, just type `11yy`. Eleven lines, counting down from the cursor, will be yanked, and `vi` indicates this with a message at the bottom of the screen: `11 lines yanked`.

You can also use the `P` or `p` commands immediately after any of the deletion commands discussed earlier. This puts the text you deleted above or below the cursor, respectively.



Caution – Use only cursor-moving commands between yanking or deleting and putting. If you delete or yank any other text before putting the new text in place, the lines you yanked or deleted will be lost.

Moving Lines

Moving lines also requires two commands: `dd` (“delete”) and either `p` or `P`.

To move one line, position the cursor anywhere on the line and type `dd`. For example, to delete 5 lines, type `5dd`.

Next, move the cursor to the line above where you want the deleted line reinserted and type `p`. This inserts the text on a new line below the cursor.

Alternatively, you can put the deleted line above the cursor by typing `P`.

Using Named Buffers

To repeatedly insert a group of lines in various places within a document, you can yank (or delete) the lines into a named buffer. You specify named buffers by preceding a command with double quotes (") and a name for the buffer. For example, to yank four lines into the named buffer `a`, type `"a4yy`. You can use several different buffers. For example, you might also delete text from one location and add it to several others. To delete 12 lines into the named buffer `b`, type `"b12dd`.

To insert the text, precede the `p` or `P` command with "*n*", where *n* is the named buffer. For example, to insert the lines saved in buffer *b*, type "`bP`".

You can overwrite named buffers with new lines. The buffers are saved until you exit `vi`.

When you use named buffers, you can safely delete and yank other text without affecting the lines you have already saved in the named buffers — unless, of course, you purposely overwrite the named buffer.

Using a Count to Repeat Commands

Many `vi` commands can be preceded by a repeat factor (called a *count*) — a number that precedes the command and tells it how many times to repeat the operation.

Most of the commands in the previous sections take counts. For instance, `3dd` repeats the command to delete a line three times, therefore deleting three lines. `2dw` deletes two words, and `4x` deletes four characters or spaces. You can also use counts with commands to move the cursor, such as `3w` and `2Ctrl-F`. This will all become evident as you learn the `vi` commands. In the section, “Summary of Basic `vi` Commands” at the end of this chapter, each command that takes a count is indicated by “[count]” before the command name.

Typing a period (`.`) repeats the previous text-changing command. For example, if you have just deleted a line with `dd`, you can move the cursor to another line and delete it by simply typing a period.

Using `ex` Commands

`ex` commands are more accurate and convenient than `yank`, `delete`, and `put` when you’re dealing with large blocks of text. Rather than counting lines on the screen and then searching for an insertion point, you give `vi` a range of lines to be moved or copied and then specify the line before the insertion point. (Of course, with a delete command there is no insertion point.)

Turning Line Numbers On and Off

To turn line numbers *on*, type `:set nu` and press Return.

Line numbers appear in the left margin. Note that these numbers do not appear when you print out the file. They are visible only on the screen.

```

1 Oh, when I die, take my saddle from the wall,
2 Put it on my pony, lead him out of the stall.
3 Tie my bones to his back, point our faces to the west,
4 And we'll ride the prairies that we love the best.
5
6 Ride around, little doggies,
7 Ride around real slow.
8 Firey and Snuffy are rarin' to go.
~
~
~
~
~
~
~
~
~
~
~
:set nu

```

To turn line numbers *off*, type `:set nonu` and press Return.

Copying Lines

The basic form of the `ex` copy command is:

```
:line#,line# co line#
```

The first two numbers (separated by a comma) specify the range of lines to be copied. The third number is the line *before* the insertion point.

For example, to copy lines 1 through 5 of `paint` and place the copy after line 12, you would type the following:

```
:1,5 co 12
```

and press Return.

When specifying line ranges, use the abbreviations

- Period (.) to denote “from the current line.”
- Dollar sign (\$) to denote “to end of file.”

Thus, to copy the range “from the current line through line 5” and insert this block after line 12, you would type:

```
:.,5 co 12
```

To copy the range “from line 6 through the end of the file” and insert this block after line 2, you would type:

```
:6,$ co 2
```

Moving Lines

The basic form of the `ex` move command is similar to the copy command discussed above:

```
:line#,line# m line#
```

Line ranges and insertion points are specified in the same ways, including use of the abbreviations `.` and `$`. The difference in function is simply that “move” removes a block from one location and reinserts it elsewhere.

For example, to move lines 1 through 5 to the line following 12, you would type:

```
:1,5 m 12
```

and press Return.

Deleting Lines

To delete a range of lines, use the command form:

```
:line#,line# d
```

For example, to delete lines 1 through 5, you would type:

```
:1,5 d
```

Searching and Replacing with `vi`

`vi` provides several ways to find your place in a file by locating a specified string of characters. It also has a powerful global replacement function.

Finding a Character String

A *character string* is simply one or more characters in a row. It may include letters, numbers, punctuation, special characters, blank spaces, tabs, or carriage returns. A string may be a grammatical word or it may be part of a word.

To find a character string, type `/` followed by the string you want to search for, and then press Return. `vi` positions the cursor at the next occurrence of the string. For example, to find the string “meta”, type `/meta` followed by Return.

Type `n` to go to the *next* occurrence of the string; type `N` to go to the *previous* occurrence.

To search backward in a file, you can use `?` instead of `/`. In this case, the directions of `n` and `N` are reversed.

Searches normally are case-sensitive: a search for “china” will not find “China.” If you want `vi` to ignore case during a search, type `:set ic`. To change it back to the default, case-sensitive mode, type `:set noic`.

If `vi` finds the requested string, the cursor will stop at its first occurrence. If the string is not found, `vi` will display `Pattern not found` on the last line of the screen.

Certain special characters (/ & ! . ^ * \$ \ ?) have special significance to the search process and must be “escaped” when used in a search. To escape a special character, precede it with a backslash (\). For example, to search for the string “anything?” type `/anything\?` and press Return.

These special characters can be used as commands to the search function, so if you want to search for a string including one or more of these characters, you must indicate this by preceding the character with a backslash. To escape a backslash itself, type `\\`.

Refining the Search

You can make searches more precise by tagging the string with indicators for the following characteristics:

- Beginning of line
- End of line
- Beginning of word
- End of word
- Wild card characters

To match the beginning of a line, start the search string with a caret (^). For example, to find the next line beginning with “Search”, type:

```
/^Search
```

To match the end of a line, end the search string with a dollar sign (\$). For example, to find the next line ending with “search.”, type:

```
/search\.$
```

(Note that the period is escaped with a backslash.)

To match the beginning of a word, type `\<` at the beginning of the string; to match the end of a word, type `\>` at the end of the string. Thus, to match a word, rather than a string, combine the end-of-word and beginning-of-word tags in the search pattern. For example, to find the next occurrence of the word—as opposed to the string—“search”, type:

```
/\<search\>
```

To match any character, type a period (`.`) in the string at the location to be matched. For example, to find the next occurrence of “disinformation” or “misinformation”, type:

```
/.isinformation
```

Since this is a search for a string and not a word, this search pattern may also find such constructions as “misinformationalist” and “disinformationism”.

To search for alternative characters in a string, enclose the alternatives in brackets. The search pattern `[md]string` will find strings beginning with either `m` or `d`. On the other hand, `[d-m]string` will find strings beginning with any letter from `d` through `m`.

To match zero or more occurrences of the last character, type an asterisk (`*`) in the string. You can effectively combine brackets and the asterisk to look for well-defined alternatives. For example, to find all strings beginning with a through `z` and ending with “isinformation” *and* to find all occurrences of the string “isinformation”, type:

```
/[a-z]*isinformation
```

Replacing a Character String

The procedure for replacing a text string is based on the search procedures discussed above. All the special matching characters for searches can be used in search-and-replace.

The basic command form is:

```
:g/search-string/s//replace-string/g
```

followed by the Return key.

Therefore, to replace every occurrence of the string “disinformation” with “newspeak”, you would type:

```
:g/disinformation/s//newspeak/g
```

and press Return.

You can modify this command to halt the search and make `vi` query whether you want to make the replacement in each instance. The following command uses `gc` (adding `c` for “consult”) to make `vi` stop at every occurrence of “disinformation” and ask whether you want to make the substitution. Respond with `y` for yes or `n` for no.

```
:g/disinformation/s//newspeak/gc
```

Note – You can cancel a “consulted” search-and-replace by pressing Ctrl-C.

Going to a Specific Line

To go to the last line of an open file, by type `G`. To return to the first line of the file, by type `1G`.

You can go to any other line by typing its number followed by `G`.

For example, suppose that you quit the file `paint` while editing line 51. You can access that line by opening the file and typing `51G`.

Inserting One File into Another

`vi` makes it convenient to “read” (insert) a file into the file you are editing. The general form of the command is:

```
:line# r filename
```

If you do not specify a line number, `vi` inserts the file at the current cursor position.

For example, if you wanted to insert the file `orwell` at line 84 of the file `paint`, you would type:

```
:84 r orwell
```

Or you could position the cursor on line 84 and type:

```
:r orwell
```

Editing Multiple Files

`vi` allows you to edit multiple files. For example, to edit the file `orwell` while you are editing `paint`:

1. **First, save your current work in `paint`. Type `:w` and press Return.**
2. **To edit `orwell`, type `:n orwell` and press Return.**
3. **Make editing changes to `orwell` and save your work.**
4. **When you are finished working with `orwell` and have saved your work, you have three choices:**
 - Exit `vi`. Type `:q` and press Return.
 - Return to `paint`. Type `:n #` and press Return.
 - Swap back and forth between two files with the command `:n #`.

Editing a Series of Files

To edit a series of files, list the file names after the `vi` command when you start `vi` from the command prompt:

```
$ vi paint orwell
```

The files appear in the order in which they are listed. First `paint` appears. When you finish editing `paint`, type `:n` to go on to the next file, `orwell`. To go on to the next file without saving changes in the current file, type `:n!` instead of `:n`.

If you have a series of files with related names (for example, `test1`, `test2`, `test3`), you can use wildcard characters to specify a group of files:

```
$ vi test*
```

The files will appear for editing in alphabetical order by name.

Copying Lines Between Files

To copy lines from one file to another, do the following:

- 1. Edit the first file.**
- 2. Save the desired lines in named buffers, using the `yank` command. For example, to save 10 lines in buffer `a`, type `a10Y`.**
- 3. Without exiting `vi`, edit the next file (`orwell` in this example):**

```
:n orwell
```

- 4. Add the lines from the first file with the `put` command. For example, to put the contents of buffer `a` below the current cursor position, type `ap`.**

Remember that the contents of all named buffers are lost whenever you exit `vi`. Don't use the quit (`:q`) command until you have finished any operations involving named buffers.

Setting `vi` Parameters

`vi` has many variables that affect its behavior and appearance. You can view a list of these variables (with their current settings) while running `vi` by typing:

```
:set all
```

followed by Return.

Recovering from a Crash

If the system crashes, the contents of your buffer are at risk. Often, though, you can recover most of your work by restarting `vi` with the command form:

```
vi -r filename
```

where *filename* is the file you were editing at the time of the crash. The system will usually send you mail after the system is restarted, telling you there is a recover file.

Summary of Basic `vi` Commands

The following table provides a convenient reference for basic `vi` commands.

Table 6-1 Basic `vi` Commands

Command	Meaning
<i>Starting vi</i>	
<code>vi filename</code>	Open or create file
<code>vi</code>	Open new file to be named later
<code>vi -r filename</code>	Recover crashed file
<code>view filename</code>	Open file read-only
<i>Cursor Commands</i>	
<code>h</code>	Move left one character
<code>j</code>	Move down one line

Table 6-1 Basic vi Commands (Continued)

Command	Meaning
k	Move up one line
l	Move right one character
w	Move right one word
W	Move right one word (past punctuation)
b	Move left one word
B	Move left one word (past punctuation)
e	Move to end of current word
Return	Move down one line
Back Space	Move left one character
Space Bar	Move right one character
H	Move to top of screen
M	Move to middle of screen
L	Move to bottom of screen
Ctrl-F	Page forward one screen
Ctrl-D	Scroll forward one-half screen
Ctrl-B	Page backward one screen
Ctrl-U	Scroll backward one-half screen
<i>Inserting Characters and Lines</i>	
a	Insert characters to right of cursor
A	Insert characters at end of line
i	Insert characters to left of cursor
I	Insert characters at beginning of line
o	Insert line below cursor
O	Insert line above cursor
<i>Changing Text</i>	
cw	Change word (or part of word) to right of cursor
cc	Change line

Table 6-1 Basic vi Commands (Continued)

Command	Meaning
C	Change from cursor to end of line
s	Substitute string for character(s) from cursor forward
r	Replace character at cursor with one other character
r Return	Break line
J	Join current line and line below
xp	Transpose character at cursor and character to right
~	Change case of letter (upper or lower)
u	Undo previous command
U	Undo all changes to current line
:u	Undo previous last-line command
<i>Deleting Text</i>	
x	Delete character at the cursor
X	Delete character to the left of the cursor
dw	Delete word (or part of word to right of cursor)
dd	Delete line containing the cursor
D	Delete part of line to right of cursor
dG	Delete to end of file
d1G	Delete from beginning of file to cursor
:5,10 d	Delete lines 5-10
<i>Copying and Moving Text</i>	
yy	Yank or copy line
Y	Yank or copy line
p	Put yanked or deleted line below current line
P	Put yanked or deleted line above current line
:1,2 co 3	Copy lines 1-2 and put after line 3
:4,5 m 6	Move lines 4-5 and put after line 6
<i>Setting Line Numbers</i>	

Table 6-1 Basic vi Commands (Continued)

Command	Meaning
:set nu	Show line numbers
:set nonu	Hide line numbers
	Setting Case-sensitivity
:set ic	Searches should ignore case
:set noic	Searches should be case-sensitive
<i>Finding a Line</i>	
G	Go to last line of file
1G	Go to first line of file
21G	Go to line 21
<i>Searching and Replacing</i>	
/string	Search for <i>string</i>
?string	Search backward for <i>string</i>
n	Find next occurrence of <i>string</i> in search direction
N	Find previous occurrence of <i>string</i> in search direction
:g/search/s//replace/g	Search and replace
<i>Clearing the Screen</i>	
Ctrl-L	Clear (refresh) scrambled screen
<i>Inserting a File into a File</i>	
:r filename	Insert (read) file after cursor
:34 r filename	Insert file after line 34
<i>Saving and Quitting</i>	
:w	Save changes (write buffer)
:w filename	Write buffer to named file
:wq	Save changes and quit vi
ZZ	Save changes and quit vi
:q!	Quit without saving changes

Using Mail



SunOS provides a program called `mailx` for sending and receiving electronic mail (*email*). `mailx` provides facilities for reading, writing, sending, receiving, saving, and deleting messages. The `mailx` program is not window-based, and can therefore be run on any terminal. Although you may prefer to use the window-based mail, you may find that the `mailx` program is handy when you are dashing off a quick note. Also, if you want to set up your own mail aliases, you can read about it here.

Note – If you’re in the OpenWindows environment and the Mail Tool icon appears on your screen, quit from the Mail Tool before trying the examples in this chapter. Otherwise, you will have two mail processes active, and this may generate error and warning messages. You can safely send mail messages in a Command Tool or Shell Tool window, but if you read your mail and save or delete messages, this will affect your “in tray,” thus confusing Mail Tool.

`mailx` *Basics*

In this section you will learn just enough about `mailx` to get by. In later sections you will learn about features and functions that will greatly enhance your ability to use this program.

An intended recipient's login name and machine name serve as a unique address for the `mailx` program. If the intended recipient is on the same machine as the sender, the login name is all that is required. Each user has a *mailbox* in which to receive mail. This mailbox is generally located in the `/var/mail/username` directory, where *username* is your login name.

The `mailx` program notifies you when you receive mail and places the mail in your mailbox. After you've read your mail, `mailx` automatically places these letters in a storage file called `mbox`, which is also located in your home directory.

Starting mailx

Start `mailx` by typing the following command at a prompt and then pressing the Return key:

```
$ mailx
```

If you don't have any mail waiting for you, your terminal will display the message:

```
No mail for username
$
```

where *username* is your login name.

Sending Yourself a Sample Letter

To see at a glance how `mailx` works, you can begin by sending yourself a sample letter. At the prompt, give the `mailx` command again, but this time include your address (your login name plus your machine name). For example, if your login was `rose` and your machine name was `texas`, your address would be `rose@texas`. (The `@` symbol is read as "at.") You may be able to use just your login on a local network—consult your system administrator when in doubt.

```
$ mailx rose@texas
```

The program will respond with a Subject : line:

```
$ mailx rose@texas
Subject :
```

If you like, type in a word or two here about the content of the letter you're sending yourself and press Return. Now type the body of the letter; use short lines and press Return at the end of each line. (Note that you can only make corrections as you go by backspacing and retyping lines *before* you press Return.)

Your sample letter might look something like this (the spaces between lines are made by pressing Return twice):

```
$ mailx rose@texas
Subject: to someone who really cares

Dear Rosey,

From the ends of your fingers
To the tip of your nose
You're a cool breeze in August
My sweet Texas Rose.

See you soon,

Rose
```

To send your sample letter, press Return to complete the last line of the letter and then press Ctrl-D. After your letter has been sent, the system returns a command prompt.

Reading Your Sample Letter

To read your sample letter, give the `mailx` command again. Your screen will probably look something like this:

```
$ mailx
Mail version 4.0 Thu Jan 16 12:59:09 PST 1992  Type ? for help.
"/var/mail/rose": 2 messages 1 new
  U  2 hal@uncertain   Fri Feb 14 12:01   14/318 financial status
>N  1 rose@texas      Mon Feb 17 08:12   21/453 to someone who
&
```

The first line identifies the version of `mail` that you are running; the second line indicates your mailbox, usually located in `/var/mail/username`, where your incoming mail is deposited. The third line in this example is the header of the letter you sent yourself. The “N” at the beginning of the line means that it’s a “new” letter. A “U” (unread) means the letter was new, but was not read before quitting the `mailx` program previously. (The information in this screen is discussed in greater detail in “Reading Letters,” in this chapter.)

Every letter is assigned a number as it is received: Rose’s letter to herself is shown as letter number 1.

To read a letter, type its number at the `mailx` prompt, the ampersand (&), as follows:

```
$ mailx
Mail version 4.0 Thu Jan 16 12:59:09 PST 1992  Type ? for help.
"/var/mail/rose": 1 message 1 new
>N 1 rose@texas  Fri Jul 14 12:01 21/453 to someone who
& 1

To: rose@texas
From: rose@texas
Subject: to someone who really cares

Dear Rose,

From the ends of your fingers
To the tip of your nose
You're a cool breeze in August
My sweet Texas Rose.

See you soon,

Rose

&
```

Quitting `mailx`

When you're finished using `mailx`, you can quit the program using one of two commands: `q` (quit) or `x` (exit).

If you type `q` at the `mailx` prompt and then press Return,

```
& q
```

you will then see a message similar to the following:

```
Saved one message in home_directory/mbox.
```

where *home_directory* is the path name to your home directory.

When you use `q` to quit `mailx` after reading messages, `mailx` moves the letters from your mailbox and saves them in the `mbox` file in your home directory. `mailx` also saves any changes or deletions you've made.

If you type `x` at the `mailx` prompt and then press Return,

```
& x
```

the `mailx` program does *not* save any changes or deletions, nor does it move any letters you've already read into the `mbox` file.

Reading Letters

If you have mail, `mailx` notifies you each time you log in with the message

```
You have mail
```

or

```
You have new mail
```

To read your letters, type `mailx` at a command prompt and press Return. If there's no mail waiting for you, you will see the message:

```
No mail for username
```

Otherwise, you will see a list similar to the following:

```
$ mailx
Mail version 4.0 Thu Jan 16 12:59:09 PST 1992  Type ? for help.
"/var/mail/rose": 4 messages 1 new 2 unread
  1 rose@texas      Fri Feb 14 12:01 21/453 to someone who
  U 2 hank@fretful   Fri Feb 14 18:31 19/353 so lonely I
  U 3 farmer@freeway Sat Feb 15 10:22 24/557 looks like my
>N 4 hoover@woofer  Sun Feb 16 23:59 14/280 big old furry

&
```

The `mailx` program displays information about itself (version number and date) and instructions for getting help (Type ? for help).

On the next line, `mailx` specifies the location of your mailbox, the number of letters received, and their status.

Next, `mailx` shows a numbered list of the letters in your mailbox. From left to right, the columns in each line specify:

- *Status*: indicates whether a letter is new (N), unread (U), or read (no symbol). A “>” at the beginning of a line indicates the current letter. Deleted letters are marked with an asterisk (*).
- *Number*: indicates order in which letter was received.
- *Sender*: indicates name of user (and usually machine) letter came from.
- *Time*: indicates date and time letter was sent.
- *Size*: indicates number of lines/number of characters in letter.
- *Subject*: indicates sender-designated subject of letter.

When you have a large number of letters in your mailbox, the displayed list may not show all of your mail. If this is the case, type:

- `z` – To display the next screenful of mail headers.
- `h-` – To display the previous screenful of mail headers.
- `h` – To redisplay the list of mail headers at any time.

To view the current letter in the mailbox list (marked with >), press Return. Pressing Return again will display the next letter. To read any letter in the list, type its number and press Return.

Deleting (and Undeleting) Letters

When you are finished reading a letter, you may decide you want to delete it rather than have it saved to your `mbox` file (the default when you quit the `mailx` program).

To delete the last letter you read, just type `d` at the `mailx` prompt. To delete a specific letter from your mailbox, use the command form:

`d number`

For example, to delete the second letter, give this command from within `mailx`:

```
& d 2
```

You can also delete several letters at a time. To delete letters 1 *and* 3, give the command:

```
& d 1 3
```

To delete a range of letters, for example 1 *through* 3, give the command:

```
& d 1-3
```

Before quitting `mail`, you can *undelete* letters you've removed from your mailbox. Use the command form:

```
u number
```

followed by Return. For example, to undelete the second letter, give this command:

```
& u 2
```

If you want to undo your last deletion, just type `u` at the `mailx` prompt immediately after the deletion. For example, if your last deletion command was `d 2-5`, typing `u` will undelete messages 2, 3, 4, and 5.

Note that all deletions are made permanent when you quit `mailx` with the `q` command; that is, deleted letters can no longer be undeleted. You can, however, quit `mailx` with the `x` command, leaving your mailbox intact — as mentioned previously, quitting with `x` will leave read letters marked with a `U`, deleted letters undeleted, and so forth.

Printing Letters

You can print a hard copy of a letter by piping a letter to a printer command. To do this, use the command form:

```
| number lp
```

at a `mailx` prompt. (The `|` symbol is called a *pipe*.) For example, to print a copy of letter 2, type:

```
& |2 lp
```

and press Return. If a letter number is not specified, `mailx` pipes the current letter to the printer. For more information on piping, see “Redirecting and Piping Command Output” in Chapter 2, “Basic SunOS Commands.”

Sending Letters

To send mail with the `mailx` program, you need to know the login name(s) of the intended recipient(s) of your letter. If an intended recipient is on a different machine, you also need to know that user’s machine name. To determine this information, you can use the `who`, `finger`, or `rusers` commands.

Typing the `who` command lists all the users who are currently logged in to the file server you are on. The displayed list contains user’s login names, their terminal types, and the date and time they logged in. For example:

```
$ who
  elmer      tty15      Feb 20 10:22
  susan      tty04      Feb 20 10:37
  stormy     tty07      Feb 20 11:49
  hankw      tty06      Feb 20 12:02
```

Typing the `finger` command displays the same type of information as `who` with a little more detail. The information that appears depends on how your system administrator has set up this command. As an example, you may see something like the following:

```
$ finger
  Login      Name           TTY      Idle    When
  elmer      Elmer Brown   tty15    43      Thu 10:22
  susan      Susan Lake    tty04    12      Thu 10:37
  stormy     Stormy Ball   tty07    12      Thu 11:49
  hankw      Hank Wilson   tty06    22      Thu 12:02
```

The `rusers` command provides information on the users currently logged in to your local network. Refer to Chapter 9, “Using the Network,” for instructions regarding the use of the `rusers` command.

When you have determined the necessary user information, complete the following steps to send a letter.

1. Type the `mailx` command followed by a user’s address:

```
$ mailx user@machine
```

where *user* is the intended recipient’s login name and *machine* is the name of the intended recipient’s machine.

- If you’ve already started `mailx`, you can just type `m` at the `mailx` prompt, followed by the intended recipient’s login and machine name:

```
& m user@machine
```

- To send the same letter to multiple recipients, separate each address with a space or a comma, for example:

```
$ mailx hank@fretful sally@dakota tex@twister
```

or

```
$ mailx hank@fretful,sally@dakota,tex@twister
```

2. When you press Return, the `mailx` program prompts you for a subject. Type a subject for your letter and press Return again.
3. Type the body of your letter. When you want to create a new line, press Return.
A sentence that wraps on your screen is not considered a new line until you press Return.

Note – Each line of text within your letter can be up to 256 characters long. When you exceed this limitation, your screen will freeze. If this occurs, press Ctrl-C to abort your letter.

4. When you have completed your letter, press Return to move the cursor to a new line. Then press Ctrl-D to send your letter.

Undeliverable Letters

If you specify an incorrect user address when you send a letter, the system responds with the message

```
user@machine...User unknown
```

and the letter is returned to your mailbox. The next time you type the `mailx` command, the header states that you have returned mail, similar to the following example:

```
N 1 Mailer-Daemon Fri Jan 3 11:13 8/49 Returned mail: User unknown
```

When a letter cannot be delivered, the file is also copied to a file in your home directory named `dead.letter`.

Canceling an Unsent Letter

You can cancel a letter at any time *before* it is sent by pressing Ctrl-C twice.

Adding Carbon and Blind Carbon Copies

Before sending a letter, you can specify that “carbon copies” be sent to other than the main addressees. You can also send “blind carbons.” (Recipients of your letter can read the addresses for the carbon copies, but not the addresses for the blind carbons.)

Many people send themselves carbons or blind carbons in order to retain a copy for their own record.

There are three methods for sending carbon copies with a letter:

- Use a text editor to edit your `.mailrc` file (in your home directory) and insert the following line:

```
set askcc
```

The `mailx` program will now display the carbon copy prompt (`Cc:`) after the subject prompt. Enter the addresses of the users you want to receive carbon copies. Separate multiple addresses with spaces.

- When you’ve finished typing the body of your letter, but before you press Ctrl-D, press Return to move to a new line and use the command form:

```
~c address(es)
```

To use this method to send carbon copies to multiple recipients, separate the addresses with spaces. For example:

```
~c hank@fretful george@lonesome stormy@snoozer
```

- A `Cc:` line is also created by the `~h` command, which displays the entire header of the letter. `~h` prompts you with `To:`, `Subject:`, `Cc:`, and `Bcc:` (blind carbon copy) lines, one line at a time. Blank lines can be filled in; filled lines can be retyped. As with other tilde commands, always use the `~h` command on a new line.

Note – `~c`, `~h`, and other tilde commands are described in “Tilde Commands,” in this chapter.

Inserting a Copy of a Letter or File

You can insert a copy of any letter in your mailbox into the letter you're writing. Likewise, you can insert a copy of any text file.

Inserting a Letter

The command form to insert a letter is

`~m number`

where *number* is the number of the letter to be inserted. For example, to send a letter to another user that includes a copy of letter number 3 from your mailbox list, you would do the following:

- 1. On a new line give the command `~m 3` and then press Return.**
- 2. `mailx` displays the message, Interpolating: 3 (continue)**
- 3. You won't see the text of message 3, but the recipient will. You can go on with your letter after (continue), or you can send it as is.**
- 4. To see the complete letter, interpolation included, type the command `~p`.**

Inserting a File

You can also insert a copy of any text file into a letter. Use the command form:

`~r filename`

as you're writing a letter. For example, to insert the file `outline` in the current letter, type:

```
~r outline
```

Replying to a Letter

Reply to mail by giving the command

`r number`

at a `mailx` prompt. (If you omit the letter number, `mailx` replies to the current letter.) For example, to reply to the sender of letter 2, give the command:

```
& r 2
```

`mailx` automatically addresses your letter and supplies an `Re: Subject:` line that echoes the original `Subject:` line. Send your reply like any other letter.

`R` is a variant of the reply command that sends your reply to all recipients of the original letter as well as to its sender. Use this command only when absolutely necessary, to avoid generating “junk mail.”

Note – You can insert a letter into your reply as shown in the previous section. To insert a copy of the letter to which you are replying, just give the command `~m` without a letter number.

Saving and Retrieving Letters

In addition to sending and receiving letters, you may also want to save and retrieve them for later use. In `mailx` you can save letters by appending them to regular text files; you can also append letters to special files called folders. Both methods are discussed below.

`mailx` makes a distinction between *saving* letters and *copying* them; saving removes a letter from the mailbox and appends it to a file or folder; copying leaves a letter in the mailbox and appends a copy to a file or folder.

Saving and Copying Letters in Files

To save a letter into a file, the command form at the `mailx` prompt is:

`s number filename`

where *number* is the number of the letter to be saved and *filename* is the file where you want to save the letter. For example, to save letter 3 into a file called `~/notes/finance`, you would type:

```
& s 3 ~/notes/finance
```

(Remember that in a path name, the `~` represents your home directory.)

You can also save several letters at once to the same file. For example, to save letters 3, 5, 6, 7, and 8 to `~/notes/finance`, you would type:

```
& s 3 5-8 ~/notes/finance
```

If the file you specify does not exist, `mailx` creates it. If the file does exist, `mailx` appends the letter you are saving to the end of the file.

Saving a file removes it from your mailbox; `mailx` displays an asterisk (*) next to the header of any letter that has been saved.

To leave the letter in your mailbox while appending it to another file, use the `copy` command, as follows:

```
& c 3 ~/notes/finance
```

Saving and Copying Letters in Folders

You can dispense with typing full pathnames to files if you save or copy letters to mail folders. Folders are special files that are stored in a folder directory.

The advantages to saving or copying letters to folders is that your letters are automatically kept together in the same directory, where they are easily accessible without typing long pathnames.

Setting the Folder Directory

To use folders, you must first set up a folder directory. This is a two-step process:

1. First, make the directory using the `mkdir` command.

For example, if you wanted your folder directory to be called `Letters`, you would first make the directory:

```
$ mkdir Letters
```

2. Second, use a text editor to edit the `.mailrc` file in your home directory (which contains `mailx` options) to set the folder directory path.

Here you need to edit the `set folder` variable to include the full path name of your newly created folder directory. For example:

```
set folder=/home/austin/rose/Letters
```

or, using the C shell shortcut `~` to specify your home directory.

```
set folder=~ /Letters
```

Now your folder directory is set to receive letters saved in folders. (The change to the `.mailrc` file will take effect the next time you start `mailx`.)

Designating Folders

You use the same commands to save or copy letters into folders as into files, except that the folder name is preceded by a plus sign (+) instead of a path name. The + tells `mailx` that the folder is to be kept in the folder directory (`Letters`).

For example, to save letter 3 to a folder called `projects`, type:

```
& s 3 +projects
```

`mailx` interprets this command as meaning “save letter 3 into `~/Letters/projects`.” (If the folder doesn’t already exist, `mailx` will create it.)

Copy the letter into a folder by typing:

```
& c 3 +projects
```

Sending a Letter Directly to a File or Folder

You can send copies of your letters directly to one of your files or folders. To send a copy to a folder, simply type the folder name in either the `Cc:` or the `Bcc:` field. Sending a copy to a file is similar, but you must include the full path name.

Reading Letters in Files and Folders

To read letters saved in a file, use the command form:

```
mailx -f filename
```

Using the example above, you would read the file `~/memos/finance` by typing:

```
$ mailx -f ~/memos/finance
```

You can read letters saved in a folder with a similar command—just use the `+` instead of a pathname. For example, to read the letters in the folder `projects`, you would type:

```
$ mailx -f +projects
```

This command starts `mailx` in the file or folder designated. Only headers for the letters in the file or folder are displayed. Select a letter to read by typing its number at the `mailx` prompt and pressing Return.

You can also work on mail folders within the `mailx` program. To see a list of your folders, type this at a `mailx` prompt:

```
& folders
```

To switch from your mailbox to a folder, use the command form:

```
& folder +foldername
```

To return to your mailbox, type this at a mail prompt:

```
& %
```

To return to the previous folder, type:

```
& #
```

Using `vi` with `mailx`

You can use the `vi` text editor to compose letters while running `mailx`. This gives you the capability of correcting mistakes and adding and deleting text before you send your letters. If you are not already familiar with using `vi`, refer to Chapter 6, “Using the `vi` Editor,” for instructions.

In the `mailx` program, you can use the standard `vi` commands for inserting, deleting, and changing text.

To write a letter with `vi`:

1. Give the `mailx` command with an address at either the `mailx` prompt (`&`) or the command prompt (`$`).
2. Type in the subject at the `Subject:` line. Press Return.
3. Start `vi` by giving the command `~v` on a new line. The `vi` screen will appear, representing an empty file in your `/tmp` directory.
4. Use `vi` commands to input and edit the body of your letter.
5. When done, quit `vi` with the command `:wq` or `ZZ`.

After you quit `vi`, `mailx` displays the message `(continue):` here you can either add to the letter (outside `vi`) or send the letter by pressing `Ctrl-D`.

Mail Aliases

A *mail alias* is a selection of user names grouped under a single name.

Use mail aliases when you want to send letters to the same group of people over and over. For example, if you wanted to send mail from time to time to hank@fretful, george@lonesome, and sally@dakota, you could create a mail alias called amigos. Then, each time you sent mail to amigos, all three people would receive it.

There are two locations where you can set up mail aliases:

- Your `.mailrc` file
- The `/etc/aliases` file

Mail aliases set up in `.mailrc` behave differently from mail aliases set up in `/etc/aliases`. These differences are summarized in Table 7-1 at the end of this section.

Setting Up Mail Aliases in `.mailrc`

Note the following about setting up mail aliases in `.mailrc`:

- Mail aliases in `.mailrc` are *private*; that is, only you can use them. For example, if you set up a mail alias called amigos in `.mailrc` and another user tried to send mail to amigos, he would receive an unknown user error message.
- When the mail is sent, `.mailrc` aliases are automatically expanded to show everyone on the mail alias. For example, if you sent mail to amigos, your mail arrives as though you had typed everyone's names as recipients. It is not apparent to the recipients that you used a mail alias to send the mail.

`.mailrc` is located in your home directory. This file contains a number of settings that control the behavior of `mailx` and Mail Tool.

To add a mail alias to `.mailrc`, type:

```
$ vi ~/.mailrc
```

Note – You can use any text editor to edit the `.mailrc` file. The example above shows the method for using the `vi` editor to edit the file. If you are not already familiar with `vi`, refer to Chapter 6, “Using the `vi` Editor,” for instructions.

Each mail alias is contained on one line of the file; that is, it can visually “wrap around” to another line, but it cannot contain carriage returns. Each mail alias should contain the following, separated by spaces:

- The word “alias”
- The name of the mail alias (must be one word)
- The recipients (logins and machine names) in the mail alias, separated by spaces

The example below shows two mail aliases. The first (`amigos`) contains three people. The second (`softball`) contains eight. Notice in `softball` how the names are visually wrapped around on the screen. This is fine, as long as no carriage returns are used.

```
alias amigos hank@fretful george@lonesome sally@dakota
alias softball earl@woofer tex@twister elmer@farmhouse
jane@freeway hank@fretful jj@walker sally@dakota steve@hardway
```

To send mail to people on a `.mailrc` alias, just address it to the mail alias name. Do *not* include your machine name. For example, if you sent the following:

```
$ mail amigos
Subject: Let's eat

Hey Compadres. How about getting together for lunch on Friday?
Anyone interested?
```


the recipients would see the following (note the expanded `To:` line):

```
To: hank@fretful george@lonesome sally@dakota
Subject: Let's eat

Hey Compadres. How about getting together for lunch on Friday?
Anyone interested?
```

Setting Up Mail Aliases in `/etc/aliases`

Note the following about setting up mail aliases in `/etc/aliases`:

- Mail aliases in `/etc/aliases` are *public*. This means that if you set up a mail alias called `softball`, anyone can send to `softball@your-machinename` and make use of the mail alias.
- When the mail is sent, `/etc/aliases` mail aliases are *not* expanded. For example, if you sent mail to `softball@machinename`, that's how the mail will read when it is received. The recipients will know what the mail alias is, but not necessarily who else is on it.

The format of mail aliases created in `/etc/aliases` is somewhat different from those in `.mailrc`. Each `/etc/aliases` alias should use the following format:

- The name of the mail alias, followed by a colon (`:`)
- The recipients (logins and machine names), separated by commas. Note that the mail alias does *not* have to be on a single line.

To modify your `/etc/aliases` file, you must first become root. If root is password protected, you'll need to know the root password.

Type the following to become the root user on the system:

```
$ su
Password:
#
```

Notice that the command prompt changes when you become root.

The following example shows how the alias `softball@texas` is added to the default `/etc/aliases` file.

```
# vi /etc/aliases
##
#Aliases can have any mix of upper and lower case on the left-
#hand side,
#but the right-hand side should be proper case (usually lower)
#
#   >>>>>>>>>The program "newaliases" will need to be run after
#   >> NOTE >>this file is updated for any changes to
#   >>>>>>>>>show through to sendmail.
#
#@(##)aliases 1.10 89/01/20 SMI
##
# Following alias is required by the mail protocol, RFC 822
# Set it to the address of a HUMAN who deals with this system's
# mail problems.
Postmaster: root

# Alias for mailer daemon; returned messages from our MAILER-
# DAEMON
# should be routed to our local Postmaster.
MAILER-DAEMON: postmaster

# Aliases to handle mail to programs or files, eg news or vacation
# decode: "|/usr/bin/uudecode"
nobody: /dev/null

# Sample aliases:
# Alias for distribution list, members specified here:
#staff:wnj,mosher,sam,ecc,mckusick,sklower,olson,rwh@ernie

# Alias for distribution list, members specified elsewhere:
#keyboards: :include:/usr/jfarrell/keyboards.list
```

```
# Alias for a person, so they can receive mail by several names:
#epa:eric

#####
# Local aliases below #
#####
softball@texas: earl@woofer tex@twister elmer@farmhouse
jane@freeway hank@fretful jj@walker sally@dakota steve@hardway
:wq          (to quit vi and save the /etc/aliases file)
# exit      (to exit root)
$
```

You can use any text editor to edit the `/etc/aliases` file. The example above shows the method for using the `vi` editor to edit the file. If you are not already familiar with `vi`, refer to Chapter 6, “Using the `vi` Editor,” for instructions.

Note that the pound signs (`#`) you see within the `/etc/aliases` file have been placed there to *comment out* the text and sample aliases. The pound signs prevent the system from processing this information as actual aliases.

Do not place pound signs in front of aliases you add to this file, unless you intentionally want to disable an alias.

To send mail to people on a `/etc/aliases` alias, address the mail using the name of the alias and your machine name. For example, if you sent the following:

```
$ mail softball@texas
Subject: Practice Today

Let's meet at the diamond behind Building 4 after work tonight.
Goodness knows we can use the practice for Saturday's game! Be
there as early as you can.
```

the recipients would see the following:

```
To: softball@texas
Subject: Practice Today

Let's meet at the diamond behind Building 4 after work tonight.
Goodness knows we can use the practice for Saturday's game! Be
there as early as you can.
```

Notice that the `To:` line is *not* expanded.

Whenever you send mail using a mail alias of this type, be sure to include the machine name of the machine on which it's located. If you set up a mail alias called `riders` on the machine `freeway`, then you should send your mail to `riders@freeway`.

Table 7-1 provides a summary comparison between mail aliases created in `.mailrc` and those created in `/etc/aliases`.

Table 7-1 Comparing Mail Aliases in `.mailrc` and `/etc/aliases`

	.mailrc	/etc/aliases
Must be <code>root</code> to modify?	no	yes
Send message to:	alias	<i>alias@machinename</i>
Recipients list seen by recipients?	yes	no
Names separated by commas?	no	yes
Names all on one line?	yes	no
Others can use the mail alias?	no	yes

For more detailed information on mail aliases, type `man aliases` or `man addresses` at the system prompt.

Tilde Commands

In the course of composing a letter, you can use tilde commands to perform a variety of functions. Tilde commands usually consist of the tilde character (~) followed by a single character. The following table describes some of the more useful tilde characters. Some of these have already been introduced in this chapter.

Note – If you want to include a literal tilde character in a letter, type two tildes in succession. Only one tilde will be displayed.

Table 7-2 Tilde Commands (`mailx`)

Command	Function
<code>~!command</code>	Escapes to a shell command
<code>~.</code>	Simulates pressing Ctrl-D to mark end of file
<code>~?</code>	Lists a summary of tilde commands
<code>~b username</code>	Adds user name(s) to the blind carbon copies (Bcc:) list
<code>~c username</code>	Adds user name(s) to the carbon copies (Cc:) list
<code>~d</code>	Reads the contents of the <code>dead.letter</code> file into current letter.
<code>~f number</code>	Forwards the specified letter. Valid only when sending a message while reading mail.
<code>~h</code>	Prompts for header lines: Subject, To, Cc, and Bcc.
<code>~m number</code>	Inserts text from the specified letter into the current letter. Valid only when sending a message while reading mail.
<code>~p</code>	Prints the message being entered to the screen.
<code>~q</code>	Simulates pressing Ctrl-C twice. If the body of the current message is not empty, the contents are saved to <code>dead.letter</code> .
<code>~r filename</code>	Reads in the text from the specified file.
<code>~s string</code>	Changes the subject line to <i>string</i> .
<code>~t name</code>	Adds the specified name(s) to the To list.
<code>~w filename</code>	Writes the current letter without the header into the specified file.
<code>~x</code>	Exits <code>mailx</code> . Similar to <code>~q</code> except message is not saved in the <code>dead.letter</code> file.

Getting Help: Other `mailx` Commands

`mailx` has two help commands that display lists of commands and functions. When in command mode, you can type `?` at the `mailx` prompt (`&`) to see a list of commands used in that mode. Likewise, when in input mode (for example, when writing a letter), you can give the equivalent command, `~?` to view a list of tilde commands (also called “tilde escapes”).

The man pages contain extensive information on `mailx` in more technical form. To see this entry, give the command:

```
$ man mailx
```

or refer to the *man Pages(1): User Commands*.

Using Printers



The LP (for *line printer* subsystem) print service is the portion of SunOS which provides the tools used for printing. It provides a wide variety of functions, many of which are not within the scope of this manual. This chapter provides only the procedures necessary for you to perform the following basic printing tasks using the LP print service:

- Submitting a print request (sending a file to the printer)
- Determining a printer's status
- Cancelling a print request

See *System Administration Guide, Volume II* for a complete description of the LP print service.

Submitting Print Requests

To print a file from the command prompt, you use the `lp` command to send a request to the printer to print that file. When a request is made, the LP print service places it in the queue for the printer, displays the request ID number, and then redisplay the shell prompt.

Submitting Print Requests to the Default Printer

When the LP print service is set up with a default printer, you can submit print requests as follows without typing the name of the printer:

```
$ lp filename
```

where *filename* is the name of the file you want to print.

The specified file is placed in the print queue of the default printer, and the *request id* is displayed.

For example, to print the `/etc/passwd` file, type:

```
$ lp /etc/passwd
request id is pinecone-8 (1 file)
$
```

See *System Administration Guide, Volume II* for information on how to specify a default printer.

Submitting Print Requests Using a Printer Name

Whether or not a default printer has been designated for your system, you can submit print requests to any printer that is configured for your system. To submit a print request to a specific printer, type the following:

```
$ lp -d printername filename
```

where *printername* is the name of the specific printer and *filename* is the name of the file you want to print.

The specified file is placed in the print queue of the destination printer, and the request id is displayed.

For example, to print the `/etc/passwd` file on the printer `acorn`, type:

```
$ lp -d acorn /etc/passwd
request id is acorn-9 (1 file)
$
```

If you submit a request to a printer that is not configured on your system, an information message is displayed, as shown in the following example:

```
$ lp -d thorn /etc/passwd
UX:lp: ERROR: Destination "thorn" is unknown to the
                LP print service.
$
```

See *System Administration Guide, Volume II* for information on configuring printers. See “Determining Printer Status,” in this chapter, for information about how to find out which printers are available on your system.

Requesting Notification when Printing is Complete

When you submit a large file for printing, you may want the LP print service to notify you when printing is complete. You can request that the LP print service notify you in two ways:

- Send an email message
- Write a message to your console window

To request email notification, use the `-m` option when you submit the print request:

```
$ lp -m filename
```

To request a message be written to your console window, use the `-w` option when you submit the print request:

```
$ lp -w filename
```

where *filename* is the name of the file you’re printing.

Printing Multiple Copies

You can print more than one copy of a file. When you request more than one copy, the file is printed the number of times you specify using the `-n` option to the `lp` command. The print request is considered as one print job, and only one header page is printed.

Enter the following to request multiple copies:

```
$ lp -nnumber filename
```

where *number* is the desired number of copies and *filename* is the name of the file you are printing.

For example to print four copies of the `/etc/passwd` file:

```
$ lp -n4 /etc/passwd
request id is pinecone-9 (1 file)
$
```

Summary Table of `lp` Options

You can customize your print request using options to the `lp` command: specifying forms, character sets, filters, titles, banners, and so forth. Table 8-1 summarizes the frequently used options for the `lp` command. You can use these options individually or combine them in any order on the command line. When you combine options, use a space between each option and repeat the dash (`-`).

For example, to specify a destination printer, request email notification, and print six copies of a file, you would enter the following:

```
$ lp -d printername -m -n6 filename
```

where *printername* is the name of the desired printer and *filename* is the name of the file you are printing.

Table 8-1 Summary of Frequently Used `lp` Options

Option	Description
-d	Destination. Specifies a destination printer by name.
-m	Mail. Sends email to the requestor when the file has printed successfully.
-n	Number. Specifies the number of copies to be printed.
-t	Title. Specifies a title (printed only on the banner page) for a print request.
-o nobanner	Option. Suppresses printing of the banner page for an individual request.
-h	Header. Puts a header on each page of the print request.
-c	Copy. Copies the file before printing.
-w	Write. Writes a message to your terminal when the file has printed successfully.

See the `lp(1)` man page for a complete list of options.

Determining Printer Status

Use the `lpstat` command to find out about the status of the LP print service. You can check on the status of your own jobs in the print queue, determine which printers are available for you to use, or determine request ids of your jobs if you want to cancel them.

Checking on the Status of Your Print Requests

Enter the following to find out the status of your own spooled print requests:

```
$ lpstat
```

A list of the files that you have submitted for printing is displayed.

In the following example, on the system `pine`, one file is queued for printing to the printer `pinecone`:

```
$ lpstat
pinecone-10          fred          1261   Mar 12 17:34 on pine
$
```

The `lpstat` command displays one line for each print job, showing the request id, followed by the user who spooled the request, the output size in bytes, and the date and time of the request.

Checking on Available Printers

To find out which printers are configured on your system, type the following:

```
$ lpstat -s
```

The status of the scheduler is displayed followed by the default destination and a list of the systems and printers that are available to you.

In the following example, on the system `elm`, the scheduler is running, the default printer is `pinecone`, and two network printers, `pinecone` and `acorn`, are available:

```
$ lpstat -s
scheduler is running
system default destination: pinecone
system for pinecone: pine
system for acorn: oak
$
```

Displaying All Status Information

The `-t` option for `lpstat` gives you a short listing of the status of the LP print service.

To display a short listing of all status information, type the following:

```
$ lpstat -t
```

All available status information is displayed.

In the following example, there are no jobs in the print queue. When files are spooled for printing, the status of those print requests is also displayed:

```
$ lpstat -t
scheduler is running
system default destination: pinecone
system for acorn: oak
pinecone accepting requests since Wed Jan 2 18:20:10 PST 1991
acorn accepting requests since Mon Mar 4 15:53:47 PST 1991
printer pinecone is idle. enabled since Wed Jan 2 18:20:22 PST
1991. available.

printer acorn is idle. enabled since Mon Mar 4 15:53:44 PST 1991.
available.
$
```

Displaying Status for Printers

You can request printer status information for individual printers using the `-p` option to `lpstat`. This option shows whether the printer is active or idle, when it was enabled or disabled, and whether it is available to accept print requests.

To request status for all printers on a system, type the following:

```
$ lpstat -p
```

In the following example, two printers are idle, enabled, and available. If one of those printers had jobs in the print queue, those jobs would also be displayed.

```
$ lpstat -p
printer pinecone is idle. enabled since Wed Jan 2 18:20:22 PST
1991. available.
printer acorn is idle. enabled since Mon Mar 4 15:53:44 PST 1991.
available.
$
```

To request status for an individual printer by name, type the following:

```
$ lpstat -p printername
```

where *printername* is the name of the specific printer.

Displaying Printer Characteristics

If you want to see all of the characteristics for a printer, use the `-p` option together with the `-l` (long) option to `lpstat`. This command can be especially useful for finding the printer type and content type.

To show characteristics for all printers on a system, enter the following:

```
$ lpstat -p -l
```

A table shows all the configuration information that is used by the LP print service for each printer.

In the following example, all of the fields are blank except for the content type and the printer type of the printer pinecone.

```
$ lpstat -p pinecone -l
printer pinecone is idle. enabled since Wed Jan 2 18:20:22 PST
1991. available.
    Content types: PS
    Printer types: PS
    Description:
    Users allowed:
        (all)
    Forms allowed:
        (none)
    Banner not required
    Character sets:
        (none)
    Default pitch:
    Default page size:
$
```

Summary Table of lpstat Options

You can request different types of printing status information using the `lpstat` command. Table 8-2 summarizes the frequently-used options for the `lpstat` command. Use these options individually, or combine them in any order on the command line. When you combine options, use a space between each option and repeat the dash (-).

For example, to show a long list of status for an individual printer, you would enter the following:

```
$ lpstat -p printername -l
```

where *printername* is the name of the printer for which you want to view status.

Table 8-2 Summary of Frequently Used `lpstat` Options

Option	Description
-a	Accept. Show whether print destinations are accepting requests.
-c	Class. Show classes and their members.
-d	Destination. Show default destination.
-f	Forms. Show forms.
-o	Output. Show status of output.
-p [<i>list</i>] [-D] [-l]	Printer/Description/Long list. Show status of printers.
-r	Request. Request scheduler status.
-R	Show position of job in the queue
-s	Status. Show status summary
-S	Sets. Show character sets
-u [<i>username</i>]	User. Show requests by user
-v	Show devices

See the `lpstat(1)` man page for a complete list of options.

Canceling a Print Request

Use the `cancel` command to cancel a print request while it is in the queue or while it is printing. To cancel a request, you need to know its request id. The request id always includes the name of the printer, a dash, and the number of the print request. When you submit the print request, the request id is displayed. If you do not remember your request id, type `lpstat` and press Return. Only the user who submitted the request, or someone logged in as `root` or `lp` can cancel a print request.

Canceling a Print Request by ID Number

To cancel a print request, type the following:

```
$ cancel requestid
```

where *requestid* is the request id number of the desired print request.

A message is displayed telling you that the request is canceled. The next job in the queue begins printing.

In the following example two print requests are canceled:

```
$ cancel pinecone-3 pinecone4
request "pinecone-3" cancelled
request "pinecone-4" cancelled
$
```

Canceling a Print Request by Printer Name

You can also cancel just the job that is currently printing (if you submitted it) by typing the printer name in place of the request id as follows:

```
$ cancel printername
```

where *printername* is the name of the printer to which you sent the request.

A message is displayed telling you that the request is canceled. The next job in the queue begins printing

In the following example the currently printing request has been canceled:

```
$ cancel pinecone
request "pinecone-3" cancelled
$
```

Your system administrator can log in as `root` or `lp` and cancel the currently printing request using the printer name as the argument for the `cancel` command.

Using the Network



A *network* is a group of computers set up to communicate with one another. When your machine is part of a network, you have the opportunity to use the resources of other machines on the network while remaining logged in to your own machine. You can log in to other machines or you can execute remote commands affecting other machines from your own workstation.

In this chapter, the following information is provided:

- General concepts of networking
- How to log in to remote machines
- How to copy files from remote machines
- How to execute commands on remote machines
- How to request status information on remote machines

If the machine you're using is not currently attached to a network, the information presented here may not be relevant to your situation. However, it may be valuable for you to at least skim this information to get an overall view of the benefits that networking can provide.

Networking Concepts

A network connection between machines allows them to transmit information to one another. Networks are often referred to as being *local area networks* (LANs), which range over small areas, generally less than a few thousand feet; *wide area networks* (WANs), which can span thousands of miles; or *campus area networks* (CANs), which are intermediate in size.

A network comprised of a linked group of networks is called an *internetwork*. For example, your machine may be part of a network within your building and part of an internetwork that connects your local network to similar networks across the country. Since the difference between a network and an internetwork is generally invisible to the user, the term “network” is used in this manual to refer to both networks and internetworks.

Machines attached to a network communicate using a *network protocol*, or common network language, to ensure that information is transmitted to the appropriate locations. An *internetwork protocol*, sometimes referred to as a *relay*, links networks together.

Logging In Remotely (rlogin)

The `rlogin` command allows you to log in to other UNIX machines on your network.

To remotely log in to another machine, type:

```
$ rlogin machinename
```

where *machinename* is the name of the remote machine.

If a password prompt appears, type the password for the remote machine and press Return. If your machine name is in the other machine’s `/etc/hosts.equiv` file, the other machine “trusts” your machine name and won’t require you to type the password.

```
$ rlogin lonesome
Password: (type password)
Last login: Mon Jan 6 09:37:55 from blue
Sun Microsystems, Inc.   SunOS 5.1       October 1992
(The following commands done on lonesome.)
$ pwd
/home/keithp
$ logout
Connection closed.
$
```

rlogin *without a Home Directory*

In the example above, user keithp logged in to lonesome at the directory /home/keithp, as indicated by the pwd command. When you log in to a machine where you don't have a home directory, rlogin displays a message stating that you have no home directory on the remote machine and logs you in to the root (/) directory of that machine:

```
$ rlogin fretful
Password:
No directory! Logging in with home=/
Last login: Fri Jan 3 10:21:59 from blue
Sun Microsystems, Inc.      SunOS 5.1      October 1992
( The following commands done on fretful. )
$ pwd
/
$ logout
Connection closed.
$
```

rlogin *as Someone Else*

There may be times when you want to log in to a remote machine as someone else. For example, if you're working on someone else's machine (using their username) and you want to log in to your own machine as yourself. The -l option to rlogin allows you to do this. The command syntax is:

```
rlogin machinename -l username
```

For example, the following shows how user `keithp` on machine `blue` would log in to machine `lonesome` as `earl`:

```
$ rlogin lonesome -l earl
Password:
Last login: Wed Jan 8 07:12:25 from blue
Sun Microsystems, Inc.      SunOS 5.1      October 1992
( The following commands done on lonesome. )
$ pwd
/home/earl
$ logout
Connection closed.
$
```

Note that when you log in to a remote machine as someone else, you are placed in that user's home directory.

`rlogin` *to an Unknown Machine*

If you try to log in to a remote machine whose name isn't known to your machine, `rlogin` searches unsuccessfully through the hosts database and then displays a notification as follows:

```
$ rlogin stranger
stranger: unknown host
$
```

Aborting an rlogin Connection

Normally you terminate an `rlogin` connection by typing `logout` at the end of a work session. If for some reason you can't terminate a session in this manner, you can abort the connection by typing a tilde character followed by a period (`~.`) at the beginning of a line. The login connection to the remote machine is aborted and you are placed back at your original machine.

If you log in to a series of machines, gaining access to each machine through another machine, and you use `~.` to abort the connection to any of the machines in the series, you are returned to your original machine:

```
$ rlogin dakota
Password:
Last login: Fri Jan 10 09:14:43 from blue
Sun Microsystems, Inc.   SunOS 5.1   October 1992
(The following command done on dakota.)
$ ~. (You may not see the ~ on the screen.)
Connection closed.
$
```

If you want to back up to an intermediate `rlogin` connection, use two tildes followed by a period (`~~.`) as follows:

```
$ rlogin lonesome
Password:
Last login: Tue Jan 7 08:12:49 from blue
Sun Microsystems, Inc.   SunOS 5.1   October 1992
(The following command done on lonesome.)
$ rlogin dakota
Password:
Last login: Tue Jan 7 10:17:40 from lonesome
Sun Microsystems, Inc.   SunOS 5.1   October 1992
(The following command done on dakota.)
$ ~~. (You may not see the ~~ on the screen.)
Connection closed.
$
```

Suspending an rlogin Connection

When you want to suspend an `rlogin` connection so you can return to it later, type the tilde character (`~`) followed by `Ctrl-Z`. The `rlogin` connection becomes a stopped process and you are placed back at the machine from which you logged in.

To reactivate the connection, type `fg`. Alternatively, you can type the percentage sign (`%`) followed by the process number of the stopped process (the default for `%`, if no process number is included, is the process most recently suspended).

```

$ rlogin lonesome
Password:
Last login: Tue Jan 7 08:12:49 from blue
Sun Microsystems, Inc. SunOS 5.1 October 1992
(The following command done on lonesome.)
~^Z (You may not see the ^Z on the screen.)
Stopped
(The following command done on blue.)
$ pwd
/home/keithp
$ %
rlogin lonesome

(The following command done on lonesome.)
$ logout
Connection closed.
$

```

Similar to aborting `rlogin` with `~.`, typing two tildes and `Ctrl-Z` suspends the current `rlogin` and places you at an intermediate `rlogin`.

Verifying Your Location (who am i)

After logging in to a variety of remote machines, perhaps under different login names, you might need to verify exactly where you are. Typing `who am i` displays the name of the machine you're currently logged into as well as your current identity.

Type `man rlogin` at the command prompt or refer to the *man Pages(1): User Commands*.

Copying Files Remotely (r`cp`)

The `rcp` command allows you to copy files from one machine to another. It uses the remote machine's `/etc/hosts.equiv` and `/etc/passwd` files to determine whether you have unchallenged access privileges. The syntax for `rcp` is similar to that used for `cp`.

Note – To copy subdirectories and their contents from one machine to another, use `rcp -r`.

Copying from Another Machine to Yours

To copy from a remote machine to your machine, the syntax is:

```
rcp machinename:source destination
```

where *machinename* is the name of the remote machine, *source* is the name of the file(s) you want to copy, and *destination* is the path name on your machine where you want the copied file(s) to reside.

The following example illustrates how to copy the file `/home/dakota/doc/letter` from the remote machine `dakota` to the `/tmp` directory on local machine `blue`:

```
$ rcp dakota:/home/dakota/doc/letter /tmp
$
```

You can also combine various abbreviations and syntaxes when using `rcp`. For example, to copy all of the files ending in `.doc` from user `hank`'s home directory on remote machine `fretful` to the current directory on local machine `blue`, you would type the following:

```
$ rcp fretful:~hank/*.doc .
$
```

Copying from Your Machine to Another

To copy from your local machine to a remote machine, the syntax is reversed as follows:

```
rcp source machinename:destination
```

where *source* is the file(s) you want to copy, *machinename* is the name of the remote machine, and *destination* is the path name on the remote machine where you want the copied file(s) to reside.

The following example illustrates how you would copy the file `austin` from your directory `~/usa/texas` to the directory `~hank/cities` on the remote machine `fretful` (remember that `~` is your home directory and `~hank` is user hank's home directory):

```
$ rcp ~/usa/texas/austin fretful:~hank/cities
$
```

For more information on the `rcp(1)` command and its options, refer to the *man Pages(1): User Commands*.

Executing Commands Remotely (rsh)

The `rsh` command (for *remote shell*) lets you execute a single command on a remote machine without having to log in formally. It can be a real time-saver when you know you only want to do one thing on the remote machine.

To execute a command on a remote machine, type:

```
rsh machinename command
```

The following example shows how you would view the contents of the directory `/home/lonesome/guitar` on the machine `lonesome`:

```
$ rsh lonesome ls /home/lonesome/guitar
collings      gibson      santacruz
fender        martin     taylor
$
```

Similar to the `rlogin` and `rcp` commands, `rsh` uses the remote machine's `/etc/hosts.equiv` and `/etc/passwd` files to determine whether you have unchallenged access privileges.

For more information on the `rsh(1)` command and its options, refer to the *man Pages(1): User Commands*.

Viewing User Information (`rusers`)

The `rusers` command (for *remote users*) shows you who's logged on to other machines on your network. Typing the `rusers` command by itself displays each machine on the network and the user(s) logged in to them, as follows:

```
$ rusers
aspen          susan
blue          keithp
dakota        sally
farmhouse     elmer
freeway       lindab      johnj      karenm
fretful       hank
lonesome      george
twister       tex
$
```

Notice that machine `freeway` has three different users currently logged in.

To display information on a specific remote machine, type the `rusers` command followed by the name of the machine, as follows:

```
$ rusers freeway
freeway       lindab      johnj      karenm
$
```

The `-l` option to the `rusers` command provides more detailed information, including user names, machine and terminal names, the time each user logged in, how long each user's been idle (if more than one minute), and the name of the machine that each user logged in from (if any):

```
$ rusers -l freeway
lindab      freeway:ttyd8    Feb 10 08:12    5:29
johnj       freeway:console  Feb 10 09:16
karenm      freeway:ttyp0    Feb 10 11:56    36
$
```

You can also use the `-l` option without providing a machine name.

For more information on the `rusers(1)` command and its options, refer to the *man Pages(1): User Commands*.

Customizing Your Working Environment

10 

The SunOS operating system makes it possible for you to control and adjust many aspects of your working environment. You do this by modifying the *environment variables* contained in your system's *initialization files*. When you login your system reads the initialization files and uses the environment variables to configure your system. By setting the environment variables you can “customize” your system to make it easier and more efficient to do your work.

This chapter describes how to:

- Customize your system by modifying your initialization files and setting the most common environment variables
- Alias SunOS commands
- Change your system prompt
- Set default file permissions
- Customize OpenWindows fonts
- Calibrate your color monitor

Initialization Files

The particular initialization files responsible for your system's configuration depend on which shell the system administrator has specified as your default shell when your system was first installed. The Bourne shell is the default shell for SunOS, but you can also use the C shell or Korn shell. Each of these shells has its own initialization file (or files).

If you're not sure which shell is your default shell (referred to as your *login shell*):

1. **Type** `echo $SHELL`:

```
$ echo $SHELL
/bin/sh
```

2. **Look at the output of the command. If it is:**

- `/bin/sh` – your login shell is the Bourne shell
- `/bin/csh` – your login shell is the C shell
- `/bin/ksh` – your login shell is the Korn shell

Regardless of the shell you are using, when you first login your system generally runs the system profile file, `/etc/profile`. This file is generally owned by the system administrator and is readable (but not writable) by all users.

After your system executes the system profile, it runs the *user profile*. The user profile is one (or more) initialization files that define your working environment. For example, if you're in the OpenWindows environment your system checks this file (or set of files) each time you start a new Shell Tool or Command Tool window.

Depending on which shell is set up as your default, your user profile can be one of the following:

- `.profile` (for the Bourne and Korn shells)
- `.login` and `.cshrc` (for the C shell)

Your user profile file(s) is located in your home directory and allows you to configure your working environment to your preference.

Environment Variables

Your system sets up your system environment using a set of specifications defined in the initialization files. If you want to temporarily modify your environment for the current work session you can issue commands directly at the command prompt. However, if you want to modify your working environment on a more permanent basis, you can store “permanent” environment variables in the `.profile`, `.login`, or `.cshrc` files.

To display the environment variables currently set on your system:

1. Type the `env` command and press Return:

```
$ env
HISTORY=100
HOME=/home/texas/keith
HZ=100
LOGNAME=keith
MAIL=/var/mail/keith
MANSECTS=\1:1m:1c:1f:1s:1b:2:\3:3c:3i:3n:3m:3k:3g:3e:3x11:3xt:3
w:3b:9:4:5:7:8
PATH=/usr/bin
SHELL=/bin/sh
TERM=sun
TZ=EST5EDT
```

Note – You can also use the `env` command to identify your login shell. It is specified in the `SHELL` environment variable. In the example above, the shell is set to `/bin/sh` (the Bourne shell).

The User Profile

This section describes some of the more commonly used environment variables. Many of these variables may already be in your user profile. As previously mentioned, your user profile file (`.profile` for the Bourne and Korn shells and `.cshrc` for the C shell) is located in your home directory.

Note – Hidden (“dot”) files can be listed by typing `ls -la`.

The following is a partial list of environment variables that can be included in your user profile. The syntax for defining environment variables depends on the shell you're using:

- `CDPATH` – Specifies the directories to be searched when a unique directory name is typed without a full path name.
- `HISTORY` – Sets the number of commands available to the `history` command (for the C shell only).
- `HOME` – Defines the absolute path to your home directory. The system uses this information to determine the directory to change to when you type the `cd` command with no arguments.
- `LANG` – Specifies the local language. Appropriate values are: Japanese, German, French, Swedish, and Italian.
- `LOGNAME` – Defines your login name. The default for this variable is automatically set to the login name specified in the `passwd` database as part of the login process. See *System Administration Guide, Volume I* for information on the `passwd` database.
- `LPDEST` – Defines your default printer.
- `MAIL` – Specifies the path to your mailbox, usually located in the `/var/mail/username` directory, where `username` is your login name. See Chapter 7, “Using Mail,” for more information on this file.
- `MANSECTS` – Sets the available sections of on-line man pages.
- `PATH` – Lists, in order, the directories that the system searches to find a program to run when you type a command. If the appropriate directory is not in the search path, you have to enter it or else type the complete path name when you enter a command.

The default for this variable is automatically defined and set as specified in your `.profile` file (Bourne or Korn shell), or `.cshrc` file (C shell) as part of the login process.

- `PS1` – Defines your command prompt. The default prompt for the Bourne and Korn shells is the dollar sign (`$`). The default prompt for the C shell is the percent sign (`%`). The default prompt for root in either shell is the pound sign (`#`).
- `SHELL` – Defines the shell used by `vi` and other tools.

- `TERMINFO` – Specifies the path name for an unsupported terminal that has been added to the `terminfo` database. You do not need to set this variable for default terminals in this database. See *System Administration Guide, Volume II* for information on the `terminfo` database.
- `TERM` – Defines the terminal you’re currently using. When you run an editor, the system searches for a file with the same name as the definition of this variable. It first searches the path (if any) referenced by the `TERMINFO` variable, and then the default directory, `/usr/share/lib/terminfo`, to determine the characteristics of the terminal. If a definition is not found in either location, the terminal is identified as “dumb.”
- `TZ` – Defines the timezone for your system clock.

Setting the PATH Variable

The `PATH` environment variable is used to locate commands within the SunOS directory hierarchy. By setting the `PATH` you create a fixed set of directories that the system always searches whenever you enter the name of a command.

For example, if you have no `PATH` variable set and you want to copy a file, you need to enter the full pathname for the command, `/usr/bin/cp`. However, if you have set the `PATH` variable to include the directory `/usr/bin`, then you can simply type `cp` and your system will always execute the command. This is because your system searches for the `cp` command in every directory named in the `PATH` variable, and executes it when it is found. Using the `PATH` variable to list the commonly used SunOS command directories can thus significantly streamline your work.

For the Bourne and Korn shells, the `PATH` variable is specified in your `.profile` file (in your home directory) using the following syntax:

```
PATH=.: /usr/bin: /home/bin
```

where *home* represents the path name of your home directory.

For the C shell, the `PATH` variable is specified in your `.cshrc` file (in your home directory) using the following syntax:

```
set path=(. /usr/bin home/bin)
```

where *home* is the path name of your home directory.

Note – In the C shell you can use the shortcut `~` to represent the path name of your home directory.

If you modify the `PATH` variable, and you are running the C shell, use the `source` command to make the changes effective in your current window without having to logout:

```
example% source .cshrc
```

If you are running the Bourne or Korn shell, type the following to make the changes effective in your current window without having to logout:

```
$ . .profile
```

Aliases (C Shell Only)

Aliases are useful shortcuts for commands you often type. For example, the default setting for the remove command (`rm`) does not ask for confirmation before removing files. Sometimes this is inconvenient, as a typing error can remove the wrong file. However, the C shell lets you use the `alias` variable to change this by adding the following line to your `.cshrc` file:

```
alias rm 'rm -i'
```

With this line in the `.cshrc`, typing `rm` will now be the same as typing `rm -i`, which is the interactive form of the `rm` command. You will then always be asked to confirm the command before any files are deleted. (The quote marks around `rm -i` in the example above are necessary to include the blank space between `rm` and `-i`. Without them the C shell cannot correctly interpret the text after the space.

To make your changes to the `.cshrc` file effective immediately in your current window, use the `source` command. The `source` command causes the system to read the current `.cshrc` file and execute the commands in it:

```
example% source .cshrc
```

Changing Your Command Prompt

The syntax you use to change your command prompt depends on whether you are using the Bourne, Korn or C shell.

Bourne and Korn Shells

For the Bourne or Korn shells, you redefine your command prompt with the `PS1` command. The following are three examples:

```
PS1=": "
PS1="\hostname\ : "
PS1="\hostname\{'id'}\}: "
```

- The first example sets the prompt to a colon (:), followed by a space.
- The second example creates a prompt consisting of your machine name followed by a colon and a space.
- The third example sets the prompt to your machine name, followed by your login name in braces {}, a colon, and a space.

Type any of the examples above to change your current command prompt. The prompt will remain until you change it again, or logout.

If you want to make your changes more permanent, add one of the above examples (or a prompt of your own creation) to your `.profile` file. If you do this, the prompt you specify will appear each time you login in or start a new shell.

C Shell

For the C shell, you personalize your command prompt with the `set prompt` command. The following are three examples:

```
set prompt="% "  
set prompt="\hostname\!:"  
set prompt="\hostname\{'id'}": "
```

- The first example sets the prompt to the percent sign, followed by a space.
- The second example creates a prompt consisting of your machine name followed by the history number of the command (hostname1, hostname2, hostname3, and so on).
- The third example sets the prompt to your machine name, followed by your login name in braces, a colon, and a space.

Type any of the examples above to change your current command prompt. The prompt will remain until you change it again, or logout.

If you want to make your changes more permanent, add one of the above examples (or a prompt of your own creation) to your `.cshrc` file. If you do this, the prompt you specify will appear each time you login in or start a new shell.

Other Useful Variables

There are many other variables which you can set in your `.profile` or `.cshrc` files. For a complete list, refer to the *man Pages(1): User Commands*. The following are a few brief descriptions of some of the more commonly used options.

Use `set noclobber` to prevent unintentional overwriting of files when you use the `cp` command to copy a file. This variable affects the C shell only. Enter the following in your `.cshrc` file:

```
set noclobber
```

Use `set history` to set the number of commands saved in your history list. The `history` command is useful to view commands you have previously entered. The history file can also be used to repeat earlier commands. This variable affects the C shell only. Enter the following in your `.cshrc` file:

```
set history=100
```

You can also affect the Bourne and Korn shells in the same manner by placing the following in your `.profile` file:

```
HISTORY=100
```

Setting Default File Permissions

The `umask` command sets a default file permission for all the files and directories you create. For example, if you are security conscious and you want to grant members of your group, and all users, only read and execute permissions (`-rwxr-xr-x`) on your directories and files, you can set the `umask` in your `.cshrc` and `.profile` file so that every new file or directory you create is protected with these permissions.

Like the `chmod` command, `umask` uses a numeric code to represent absolute file permissions. However, the method used to calculate the code for `umask` is distinctly different from the method for `chmod`.

To begin with, if `umask` is set to `000`, all files you create have the following (read and write, but not execute) permissions:

```
rw-rw-rw- (mode 666)
```

and all directories created have the following (read, write, and execute) permissions:

```
rwxrwxrwx (mode 777)
```

To determine the value to use for `umask`, you subtract the value of the permissions you want (using the value you would specify for the `chmod` command) from the current default permissions assigned to files. The remainder is the value to use for the `umask` command.

For example, suppose you want to change the default mode for files from 666 (rw-rw-rw-) to 644 (rw-r--r--). Subtract 644 from 666. The remainder, 022, is the numeric value you would use with `umask` as follows:

```
umask 022
```

Similar to the numeric code for the `chmod` command, the three numbers used with `umask` are as follows:

- The first digit controls user permissions
- The second controls group permissions
- The third digit controls permissions for all others

Table 10-1 shows the file permissions created for each digit of the `umask` command's numeric code.

Table 10-1 Permissions for `umask`

umask code	Permissions
0	rwX
1	rw-
2	r-x
3	r--
4	-wX
5	-w-
6	--X
7	---(none)

For more information on the `umask` command, refer to the *man Pages(1): User Commands*.

Customizing OpenWindows Fonts

If you choose, you can customize the size and style of the fonts displayed in your OpenWindows applications. The following sections describe how to customize these fonts.

Specifying the Font Style and Point Size

The default font for windows is Lucida Sans in 12 point (`medium`); the default font for window headers is Lucida Sans Bold. If you prefer, you can specify another font style and size for windows and window headers. You can make the change for a single window or you can make a permanent change for all your applications with Workspace Properties. The following subsections describe each of these options.

Fixed-Width and Proportionally-Spaced Fonts

Note that there are two general categories of fonts—*fixed-width* and *proportionally-spaced*. Each character in a fixed-width font takes up the same amount of space as every other character. By contrast, the characters in a proportionally-spaced font require varying amounts of space, depending upon their individual width. Proportionally-spaced fonts are more pleasing to the eye. However, some applications (such as Command Tool, Shell Tool, and `xterm`, a popular terminal emulator application) work best with fixed-width fonts.

Choosing Between Fixed and Proportional Fonts

Note that the default font displayed in Command Tool and Shell Tool is a proportionally-spaced font. Although this font is pleasing to the eye, problems occur in character alignment (when spacing and tabbing) with any proportionally-spaced font in terminal windows. If the spacing and tabbing character alignment are a problem for you, it is best to choose a fixed-width font for these windows. In the examples that follow, only fixed-width fonts are used for terminal windows; the examples for other windows and headers use proportionally-spaced fonts.

Specifying the Font for a Single Window

This section describes how to open a single application with a modified font style and point size. Note that changes cannot be made to existing windows; you must start a new application to display the new font. To start a new application, you type its application name on a command line.

The basic command, shown below, specifies the application name, the `-fn` (font name) option, and the font style and size. The ampersand (&) returns your system prompt to the window after you type the command; this enables you to continue using that window.

```
$ application -fn fontstyle-pointsize &
```

The following are examples of how to use the command to open an application with a specified font style and size.

- The example below starts a new Command Tool with the proportionally-spaced font, Lucida Sans Typewriter Bold.

The point size is not specified; therefore the default (12-point) is used.

```
$ cmdtool -fn lucidasans-typewriter-bold &
```

- The example below starts a new Shell Tool with Lucida Sans Typewriter Bold and increases the size of the font from 12 point to 14 point.

Note that when you change the size of the font, the size of the window changes as well.

```
$ shelltool -fn lucidasans-typewriter-bold-14 &
```

- The example below starts a new `xterm` terminal window with the font `terminal-bold` in 16 point:

```
$ xterm -fn terminal-bold-16 &
```


- The example below starts a new Text Editor with the font Helvetica Bold in 14 point:

```
$ textedit -fn helvetica-bold-14 &
```

Use the `-fn` option with any application and any font style and size you choose. “The Available Font List” on page 158” describes how to list all the fonts available for OpenWindows applications.

Making Font Assignments Permanent

If you find that you are repeatedly running applications with customized fonts, you might like to add the customization to your workspace menu. You can do this using the Programs Menu category of Workspace Properties. This will save you the effort of typing the command-line options every time. For example, if you often want to run the text editor with a larger point size, you could add the following command line to the programs menu:

```
textedit -fn lucidasans-typewriter-14
```

You can have more than one instance of the same application in your programs menu if you want them to have different font sizes. This is useful if you run an application at a variety of different point sizes. For instance, you may want to have the option of running a text editor using 12, 14, or 18 point fonts. You would add the following commands to your programs menu:

```
textedit -fn lucidasans-typewriter-12  
textedit -fn lucidasans-typewriter-14  
textedit -fn lucidasans-typewriter-18
```

Once you have customized your programs menu from Workspace Properties in this way, you can invoke the text editor at any of these point sizes simply by selecting the appropriate item from your programs menu.

Note – Command lines added to the programs menu should not be followed by an ampersand (&).

Listing the Available Fonts

You may want to experiment with more fonts than have been shown in the previous examples, and you may want to apply them to other OpenWindows applications. To do this you first list the available fonts and then select them.

The Available Font List

You can see the entire list of available fonts by entering `xlsfonts` at the prompt in a terminal emulator window. It is best to use Command Tool to display the list because it is likely that the list will scroll off the top of the screen, and Command Tool has a scrollbar that will let you view the entire list.

Note – The list generated from `xlsfonts` is very long; there are over 400 fonts available. If the listing on your screen does not contain the expected number of fonts, check with your system administrator. It is possible that a subset of the available fonts was installed.

Each font has a long name in addition to a shortened version. The full name for `lucidasans-typewriter`, for instance, is:

```
-b&h-lucida sans typewriter-medium-r-normal-sans-12-120-72-72-m-0-iso8859-1
```

The fonts you see in the `xlsfonts` listing are the long names followed by their short names. For the purposes described in this chapter, just use the short names.

Once you have chosen a font, follow the instructions in “Specifying the Font Style and Point Size” on page 155 to customize the fonts in your application windows.

Calibrating Your Color Monitor

The Kodak Color Management System (KCMS) with Solaris 2.5, helps you maintain accurate color as your images are scanned, viewed on a monitor, printed, recorded on film, or otherwise reproduced.

In this section, the following information is provided:

- General concepts of monitor calibration
- How to adjust your viewing environment
- How to connect the Calibrator Tool hardware or *puck*
- How to run Calibrator Tool

Note – The puck is not mandatory, but it is highly recommended that you use it to calibrate your color monitor. If you do not have a puck you can still calibrate your monitor.

Monitor Calibration Concepts

Every color device, such as a scanner, monitor or printer, has a set of color reproduction characteristics. The KCMS software uses a set of *characterization data* for a particular make and model of a color device. Gathering characterization data of a scanner or a monitor requires highly specialized instruments and is called *characterization*. Characterization results in a file called a *nominal profile* that contains detailed, machine-readable color reproduction information. A collection of nominal profiles are provided with the KCMS product. Nominal is an average color response derived from measurements taken from several samples of each type of device.

Note – Currently only monitors can be characterized; scanners and printers cannot be characterized.

The nominal profile represents the color reproduction of a device at known settings and in a known environment. Nominal profiles are adequate for most workstation users. But the reproduction characteristics of a color device change due to age, media, and temperature. To obtain accurate color reproduction, you should adjust the nominal profile to reflect the actual reproduction characteristics of your device in your viewing environment. The process of adjusting the nominal profile is called *calibration*. For more information on

adjusting your viewing environment, see “Adjusting Your Viewing Environment” on page 161. For more information on calibrated profiles, see “Calibrated Profiles and Visuals” on page 160.

Although scanner and printer calibration is difficult, video monitor calibration is accomplished by displaying a programmed sequence of test colors and measuring the output of the display by a puck. The KCMS library then computes the correction factors necessary to compensate for the inaccuracies of the monitor. This process is *monitor calibration*. The KCMS Calibrator Tool performs monitor calibration. See “Running Calibrator Tool” on page 165 for instructions on how to calibrate your monitor with Calibrator Tool.

If you adjust any of your monitor’s front-panel controls (such as Brightness, Contrast, Picture or Black Level) you need to recalibrate to update the color reproduction of your monitor. If you are a critical user of color, you should recalibrate whenever you adjust any of these settings or once every two weeks. You must recalibrate if you replace your monitor or your framebuffer.

Application programs can access the KCMS library directly through the KCMS application programming interface (API). If you purchased the Software Developer’s Kit (SDK), see the *KCMS Application Developer’s Guide* for detailed information on the KCMS API.

Calibrated Profiles and Visuals

When Calibrator Tool calibrates your monitor it produces one *calibrated profile* for each frame buffer’s visual. When images are displayed on a monitor, two conditions may exist that affect whether the resultant color appears the same on two different devices: the slow shifting of color and the use of *X visuals*.

Recalibrating corrects the slow shifting of color. Your frame buffer’s hardware gamma lookup table (LUT) corrects *X visuals*. A visual is a data structure describing the display format a display device supports. The visual describes the display characteristics for each pixel in the window. In other words, a window’s visual instructs the display device’s hardware gamma LUT how to interpret the value of the window’s pixels. When the visual goes through the gamma LUT, it is then corrected.

If the KCMS software calibrates a corrected *X visual*, the resultant color will not appear the same on two different devices because the visual will be gamma corrected twice. The KCMS software determines if the *X visual* has been

corrected with a hardware gamma LUT to ensure color consistency. For more information on X visuals and hardware gamma LUTs, see the `xgetvisualinfo(3)` and `xsolarisgetvisualgamma(3)` man pages.

The calibrated profile that describes your monitor is copied to the `/etc/openwin/devdata/profiles` directory. Read-only nominal profiles are in `/usr/openwin/etc/devdata/profiles`.

A copy of the profile you select with Calibrator Tool (see “To Select a Monitor” on page 166) is made for each type of color visual supported by your frame buffer. GrayScale or StaticGray visuals are not considered because they are not color visuals. If your frame buffer supports both PseudoColor and TrueColor visuals, two or more sets of measurements will be taken by Calibrator Tool.

Adjusting Your Viewing Environment

You can make many adjustments to your monitor and working environment to create a good viewing environment. A good viewing environment reduces stress on your eyes. Before you calibrate your monitor establish a good viewing environment. Adjustments are either related to your working environment or your monitor. Make the working environment adjustments with your monitor turned off; make the monitor adjustments with your monitor turned on.

See the following white papers provided on line in `/usr/openwin/demo/kcms/docs` for detailed information on adjusting your viewing environment:

- *Reducing Eyestrain from Computer Monitors*
- *Video Monitor Adjustments: “Black Level” and “Picture”*

Adjusting Your Working Environment

Make the following adjustments to your working environment with your monitor turned off:

- Minimize reflections
- Adjust ambient light
- Establish a suitable *surround*
- Establish a comfortable viewing distance

Note – You do not need to shut down your computer as long as your monitor has its own power switch.

Minimizing Reflections

Your screen has a glass faceplate that reflects—into your eyes—light that originates behind you. Reflections can change your perception of your display at the location where it is reflected. The flatter your monitor’s faceplate, the less of a problem reflections are likely to be; a highly curved screen “collects” reflections over a wide angle behind you.

To determine whether your screen has reflections, sit in your normal working position and examine the dark screen for reflections. (The reflections may be distorted by the curvature of the screen.) Try to arrange your environment so that no intense light sources are reflected on your screen. If you cannot move your furniture, either move the light source or block your (reflected) view of the offending object with dark cardboard baffles.

Your monitor’s screen may have an integral *antiglare* coating or treatment to minimize glare. A monitor with this treatment appears to have a very dark screen when it is turned off. You can attach an external antiglare screen to the front of your monitor, but some antiglare screens have such low light transmission that you may find that they reduce the intensity of white to an unacceptably low level.

Adjusting Ambient Light

Not only can you see light that originates behind you, but you can see objects other than light, like your own silhouette. To minimize reflections of objects in front of your screen other than lights, reduce the general light level, or *ambient illumination*. Overhead fluorescent light is usually the cause of this type of reflection because it is excessively bright. Use a different light source (for example, lamps) if this type of reflection occurs.

Establishing a Suitable Surround

Visual stress is induced if—while watching your screen—your peripheral vision is exposed to a light intensity substantially brighter than the brightest regions of your display. The color science term *surround* refers to the area perceived by your peripheral vision while you are looking at a display. In

addition to disturbing your peripheral vision, a bright surround increases your ambient illumination. Try to establish a visual surround that is darker than the brightest white of your screen.

It is beneficial to have a visual reference to the outside world—such as a window to the outdoors—while working at your computer. If you have a window, make sure you sit so that the window is far enough to your side that it does not impinge your peripheral vision, but not so far behind to reflect in your screen.

Establishing a Comfortable Viewing Distance

If you can see individual pixels on your screen, you are probably sitting too close to your screen. Visual recognition skills, particularly reading, develop on the basis of recognizing shapes, not dots. When you look at the letter “V”, you should perceive two angled intersecting straight lines, not two jagged vertical elements or a collection of dots.

For minimum stress viewing of your screen, you should work at a sufficient distance so that you cannot see individual pixels on the screen. A sufficient distance is usually at arm’s length. Extend your arms in front of you while you are sitting at your workstation. The tips of your fingers should reach the faceplate of your screen. The arm’s-length viewing distance minimizes stress due to focusing at short distances for an extended period of time.

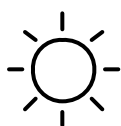
If you have trouble making out characters at a viewing distance sufficient to blend pixels into shapes, consider using a larger font for viewing on the screen.

Adjusting Your Monitor

Once your working environment is set up properly, let your monitor warm up for at least *one hour* adjust your monitor’s Black Level and Picture.



This icon indicates the Picture (or Contrast) control. It affects the brightness that is reproduced for a full white input signal. Once Black Level is set correctly, Picture should be set for comfortable viewing brightness.



This icon indicates the Black Level (or Brightness) control. This control should be adjusted so that black picture content displays as true black on your monitor. Incorrectly adjusting this control is the most common problem of poor quality picture reproduction on computer monitors, video monitors and television sets.

A monitor is properly adjusted when it meets these conditions:

- A black input signal should produce true black to maximize the contrast ratio of the display
- A white input signal should produce the desired intensity

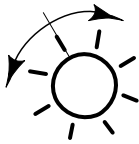
▼ **To Adjust Your Monitor**

Follow these steps to properly adjust your monitor.



1. Turn your monitor's Picture control to minimum to display a black picture.

The minimum setting of the Picture control causes the picture content to disappear entirely. If your monitor's picture cannot be made to vanish, then you will have to arrange to display a picture that is substantially black (for example, by activating a screen-saver).



2. Turn your monitor's Black Level control to adjust black correctly.

Turn the Black Level control to the balance point or threshold. The threshold is low enough that a black area of the picture emits no light, but high enough that setting the control any higher would cause the area to become a dark gray.



3. Turn your monitor's Picture control to adjust the brightness level.

Once the black level is set correctly, the Picture control can be adjusted so that a white signal produces the appropriate level of brightness. There is no proper setting of this control; it depends entirely on your preference.

Avoid setting your monitor too bright. Excessive brightness can increase your sensitivity to flicker, reduce the contrast ratio of the picture, and defocus the electron beam of the CRT, resulting in poor sharpness.

Note – You may need to iterate between the Black Level control and the Picture control a few times to set the combination that both reproduces black correctly and white at the brightness you desire.

Connecting the Calibrator Puck

Once you adjust your viewing environment, connect a monitor calibrator device (called a *puck*) to your workstation.

Note – The puck is not mandatory, but it is highly recommended that you use it to calibrate your color monitor. If you do not have a puck, skip to “Running Calibrator Tool.”

▼ To Connect the Calibrator Puck

- ◆ **Connect your puck to either serial port A (1) or port B (2) of your workstation.**

x86 – Connect the puck to port 1. If your workstation does not recognize the new device (the puck), you may need to turn off your machine and reboot.

The puck sticks to your monitor’s screen with a suction cup. See Step 4 on page 169 for instructions on when to use the calibrator puck.

Running Calibrator Tool

Once you have adjusted your viewing environment, connected your puck (if you have one) and your monitor has warmed up for at least *one hour*, you are ready to run Calibrator Tool.

Run Calibrator Tool with `kcms_calibrate` in a command tool window. The `kcms_calibrate` program runs on Solaris 2.4 or 2.5 and requires a color frame buffer, or color monitor. Calibrator Tool takes approximately one minute to calibrate PseudoColor visuals and another minute to calibrate TrueColor visuals. If your framebuffer supports both types of visuals, allow at least two minutes for calibration.

▼ To Start Calibrator Tool

◆ Type `kcms_calibrate` to run Calibrator Tool.

The Setup window is displayed as shown in Figure 10-1.

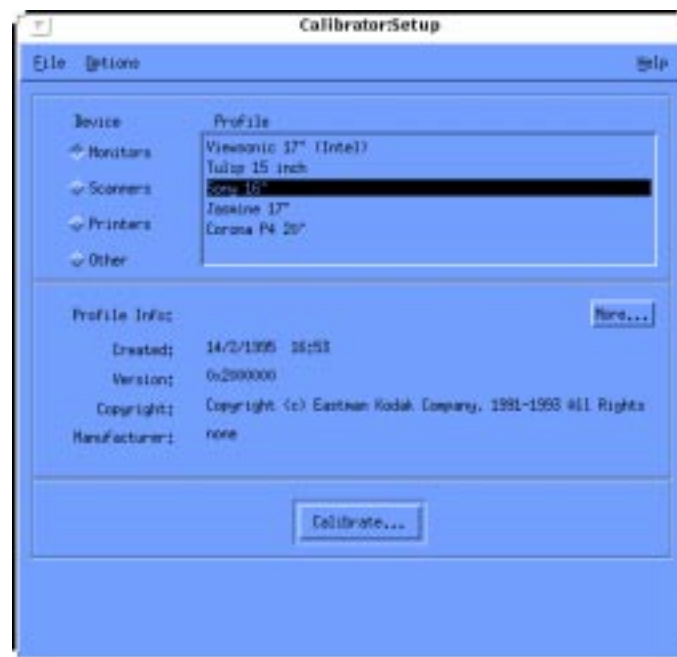


Figure 10-1 Calibrator Tool Setup Window

▼ To Select a Monitor

Before you press the Calibrate... button, you must choose a monitor.

1. Click on Monitors.

A list of monitor profiles available in your environment is displayed as shown in Figure 10-1.

2. Select a Monitor Type.

If you do not know the type of monitor you have, you can get general information about a monitor by clicking on the More... button. The information is displayed in a separate window. The following information is an example of the type of information given when you select a Sony 16" profile and press the More... button:

- Color space = RGB
- Device manufacturer = Sony
- Device model = 16"
- White point = 0.964294 1.000000 0.825104, press OK to dismiss window

You can also use Table 10-2 to help you choose a monitor. The Sun part number is located on the monitor's nameplate. Find the part number on your monitor and match it to the part number in this table. Use the rest of the information in the row to choose a monitor.

Table 10-2 Monitor Profile Information

Sun Part Number	Description	Manufacturer	Profile Description
365-1130-01	P3 16" Color	Sony	Sony 13/16/19" Monitor
365-1112-01	P3 19" Color	Sony	Sony 13/16/19" Monitor
365-1159-01	P3 16" Color	Sony	Sony 13/16/19" Monitor
365-1160-01	P3 19" Color	Sony	Sony 13/16/19" Monitor
365-1147-01	P3 16" Color SH (Southern Hemisphere)	Sony	Sony 13/16/19" Monitor
365-1148-01	P3 19" Color SH	Sony	Sony 13/16/19" Monitor
365-1288-01	P3 19" Color Logoless	Sony	Sony 13/16/19" Monitor
365-1289-01	P3 16" Color Logoless	Sony	Sony 13, 16 and 19" Monitor
365-1153-01	Skol 19" P3 MPR2	Sony	N/A
365-1151-02	Rosebud 17" Mid Range (MR) Color	Sony	N/A
365-1166-02	Rosebud 17" MR Color Logoless	Sony	N/A
365-1164-02	Rosebud 17" MR SH Color	Sony	N/A
365-1165-02	Rosebud 17" MPR2 MR	Sony	N/A

Table 10-2 Monitor Profile Information (Continued)

Sun Part Number	Description	Manufacturer	Profile Description
365-1068-01	21" Color	Toshiba	N/A
365-1286-01	Tulip 15" FS Color	Nokia	Sony 15" Monitor
365-1167-01	Corona P4 20" Color	Sony	Sony 20" Monitor
365-1313-01	Corona P4 20" Color Logoless	Sony	Sony 20" Monitor
365-1317-01	Corona P4 20" Color SH	Sony	Sony 20" Monitor
365-1316-01	Jasmine 17" N1 Color	Sony	Sony 17" Monitor

▼ To Calibrate a Monitor

1. Click on Calibrate...

A separate window is displayed asking you to choose a device as shown in Figure 10-2.

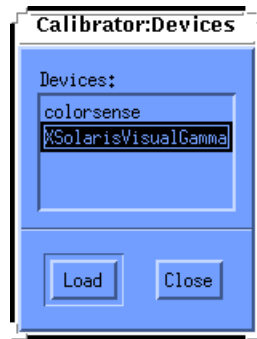


Figure 10-2 Calibrator Devices Window

2. Choose a device.

If you have a puck that correlates to a device in the list, choose that device.

If you do not have a puck, choose XSolarisVisualGamma. The calibrated profile is based on the gamma values stored in the LUT for your specific frame buffer.

3. Click on Load.

If you have a puck, a separate window will be displayed as shown in Figure 10-3. It is the Calibrator Profile window with a medium gray circle. This circle will be in the middle of your screen.

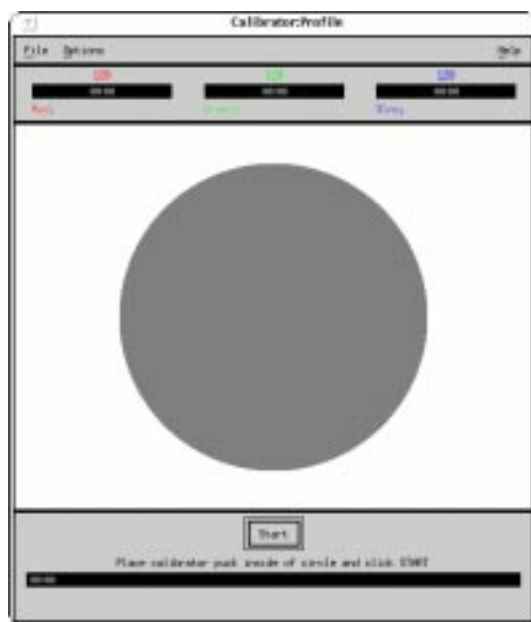


Figure 10-3 Calibrator Profile Window

The center of your screen provides the most accurate readings. Do not move the window, and since calibration takes several minutes, be sure that no extraneous window (like a pop-up dialog) will obscure the calibration window until calibration is complete.

If you do not have a puck, the Calibrator Profile window will be displayed. You do not need to worry about moving the window or pop-up dialogs. Skip to Step 5.

4. If you have a calibrator puck, place it firmly in the center of the circle.

5. Click on the Start... button.

After a few seconds, the circle becomes cyan and calibration begins.

Depending on the type of frame buffer you have, the measurement cycle (for red, green and blue) may repeat a second time. If your frame buffer supports both PseudoColor and TrueColor visuals, two sets of measurements will be taken. If the frame buffer implements only one of these types, only one set of measurements is taken.

If a pop-up dialog appears in the middle of the color circle, you must restart the calibration. The calibration data is now contaminated and will produce inaccurate measurement data. See “To Interrupt Calibration” for information on halting calibration.

When the tool has completed reading measurements, the monitor’s profiles are updated and a message is displayed informing you that calibration is completed.

6. Remove the calibrator puck from the screen.

Once calibration is completed, remove the puck from the screen. Store it in a position that prevents dirt and dust from gathering on its glass faceplate.

▼ To Interrupt Calibration**◆ Click on Stop.**

A separate window is displayed asking if you want to continue calibration or exit. If something obstructed the calibrator puck from reading the circle, you must exit and then restart calibration.

Calibration does not halt until the current color has been completely measured. For example, if you click on Stop while the Red measurement indicator is at 24, calibration will continue until Calibrator Tool is finished measuring Red (when the indicator is 255).

▼ To Quit Calibrator Tool**◆ Click on Quit.**

You can then quit the Calibration window and quit Calibrator Tool.

Error Messages

Error messages you might get while running Calibrator Tool are described below.

Swap Space

Swap space errors indicate a memory allocation error. You may have too many applications running or you may need more swap space. The following swap space error messages tell you to quit some applications and restart Calibrator Tool:

- Not enough swap memory to continue
- Could not initialize visual data structure
- Could not initialize calibration data structure

Package Installation

Package installation errors indicate that the KCMS packages were not installed properly. The following package installation error messages tell you to reinstall the KCMS packages:

- Could not load the profile
- Could not update profiles for this device
- Unable to create visual profiles
- Unable to configure profile files in `/etc/openwin`

Puck Connection

Puck connection errors indicate a communication problem with Calibrator Tool and the calibration puck. You may not have the puck connected firmly in a port or connected to the correct port.

x86 – The puck must be connected to port 1.

The following puck connection error messages tell you to check that the calibrator is plugged in firmly to either serial port A or serial port B of your workstation:

- Calibrator Tool is not functioning properly
- Unable to get a response from the puck
- Unable to read the puck version number
- Unable to get the puck sensitivity value
- Unable to set the puck sensitivity value
- Unable to get the puck integration time
- Unable to get the puck refresh fields value
- Unable to set the puck averaging value
- Module was unable to perform successful luminance data measurement

OWconfig Data

OWconfig error messages indicate that data in the OWconfig data base is corrupted. Check your OWconfig file for an incorrect entry. You should EXIT and restart Calibrator Tool.

Device Handler

The device handler error message indicates there is no device handler for the selected device. Calibrator Tool cannot load the calibration module. You should install the device handler in the `/usr/openwin/etc/devhandlers` directory or select another device.

Module Initialization

The module initialization error indicates that a module was not able to finish initialization. You need to EXIT or use another shared object.

Incomplete Module Measurement

Incomplete module measurement error messages indicate that the module did not successfully complete measuring your monitor's luminance. This is usually caused by you pressing the Stop button. You should EXIT Calibrator Tool or Close the dialog and restart calibration.

Invalid Profile

The invalid profile error messages indicates you cannot calibrate the profile you have selected. You should select a valid profile.

Private Colormap Entry Allocation

The private colormap entry error message indicates that Calibrator Tool could not allocate the entry. You need to make sure you are running the window server with an available dynamic visual because Calibrator Tool specifies its own color(s). You should either EXIT Calibrator Tool or restart calibration.

Migrating to OpenWindows Version 3.3, or Later Versions



In some cases you may be running a version of the user environment software that is no longer current with Solaris, which runs OpenWindows as its default user environment. For example, you may be running the SunView user environment software, or a version of OpenWindows earlier than Version 3.3. If so, you may want to upgrade to OpenWindows 3.3, or later versions. This appendix describes how to do this.

Note – The SunView software is no longer supported in OpenWindows Version 3.3, or later versions. Unlike previous versions of OpenWindows, once you migrate to Version 3.3 or later you no longer have the option of also running SunView.

SPARC *Migrating from the SunView Environment*

If you are migrating to the OpenWindows environment from the SunView environment, the following information may make your transition easier.

SPARC *The .defaults and .xdefaults Files*

To customize your OpenWindows environment in the same way as your SunView environment, you can convert your `.defaults` file (used by the SunView software) into an `.xdefaults` file (used by the OpenWindows

software). If you have a `.defaults` file in your home directory, you should run the `convert_to_Xdefaults` program that's in your home directory, as follows:

```
$ cd
$ /usr/openwin/bin/convert_to_Xdefaults .defaults
```

This creates an `.Xdefaults` file in your home directory that is used to customize your OpenWindows environment when you start the software.

Migrating from a pre-Version 3.3 OpenWindows Environment

Read this section carefully if you formerly ran a version of the OpenWindows environment that predates Version 3.3 and now want to migrate to Version 3.3, or later versions. In particular, much of this information applies to those who have been using the OpenWindows Version 2 Environment.

The OPENWINHOME Environment Variable

If you are currently running a version of the OpenWindows software earlier than Version 3.3, you may have set up your system to use the `OPENWINHOME` environment variable. It is no longer recommended that users set the `OPENWINHOME` environment variable, either by-hand or from a start-up file.

When you run the `openwin` command it automatically sets the `OPENWINHOME` environment variable to `/usr/openwin`; therefore, you do not need to do it.

If you have set the `OPENWINHOME` environment variable in either the `.profile` or `.cshrc` file in your home directory, comment out the line or delete it altogether before running OpenWindows Version 3.3, or later versions.

To remove, or comment out, the `OPENWINHOME` environment variable in the `.profile` or `.cshrc` file:

- 1. Open the `.profile` or `.cshrc` file using a text editor such as `vi`.**
- 2. Type a pound sign (#) before the variable, as shown below, or delete the line entirely.**

If you are working in the `.profile` file, use example a; if you are working in the `.cshrc` file, use example b

a. In the `.profile` file:

```
#OPENWINHOME=/usr/openwin
```

b. In the `.cshrc` file:

```
#setenv OPENWINHOME /usr/openwin
```

3. Save and quit the file.

The `.xinitrc` File

The following are important notes about the `.xinitrc` and `/usr/openwin/lib/Xinitrc` files:

1. In the OpenWindows Version 2 environment, the `openwin` script automatically created a copy of `/usr/openwin/lib/Xinitrc` to a file called `.xinitrc` in your home directory. This is no longer the case in the OpenWindows Version 3.3 environment. This is significant because:
 - a. The `openwin` start-up script uses the default start-up file, `/usr/openwin/lib/Xinitrc`, unless there is an `.xinitrc` file in your home directory, which overrides the default.
 - b. It is important that you use the default `/usr/openwin/lib/Xinitrc` file that come with OpenWindows Version 3.3 software, or later versions. (However, if you want to retain any special changes you made to the `.xinitrc` file in the Version 2 software, you can do so by following the instructions in this section.)
2. If you run your system with multiple screens, you no longer need multiple instances of `olwm`.

Using the Correct Start-up File

If you are currently running a version of the OpenWindows software earlier than Version 3.3, it is important to determine the status of your `.xinitrc` file. The `.xinitrc` file is an OpenWindows start-up file your home directory that may contain user-defined options.

To determine the status of your `.xinitrc` file, type the following commands:

```
$ cd
$ ls -a .xinitrc
```

Depending on the output of this command, do one of the following things:

- If you do not have a `.xinitrc` file (that is, the results of the previous `ls -a` command does not return a listing for the file) do nothing. If there is no `.xinitrc` file in your home directory, OpenWindows uses the system default start-up file.
- If you have a `.xinitrc` file (that is, the result of the previous `ls -a` command returns a listing for the file), but you have never made any changes to the file or do not want to keep the changes you have made, do Step 1 “Start-Up File Procedures.”
- If you have a `.xinitrc` file (that is, the result of the previous `ls -a` command returns a listing for the file), and you have made changes to the file that you want to keep, do Step 2 in “Start-Up File Procedures.”

Start-Up File Procedures

1. To delete the `.xinitrc` file from your home directory, type the following command:

```
$ rm .xinitrc
```

2. To retain the changes to your `.xinitrc` file, do the following steps:

- a. Move `.xinitrc` to `.xinitrc.save`:

```
$ mv .xinitrc .xinitrc.save
```

- b. Copy /usr/openwin/lib/Xinitrc to .xinitrc in your home directory:**

```
$ cp /usr/openwin/lib/Xinitrc $HOME/.xinitrc
```

- c. Add the lines that you want to keep from the .xinitrc.save to .xinitrc.**



Caution – When editing the `.xinitrc` file, do not add a secondary version of `olwm`, do not add `svenv`, and do not remove the line containing `/usr/openwin/lib/openwin-sys`.

Workspace Properties

In prior versions of OpenWindows (before version 3.3), a change made in the Workspace Properties menu would be stored in the file `.Xdefaults` in your home directory. In OpenWindows version 3.3, and later versions, changes made in the Workspace Properties menu are now stored in the file `.OWdefaults`, also in your home directory. The `.Xdefaults` file can still exist, but precedence is given to the customizations made in `.OWdefaults`.

The `.Xdefaults` file should be used *only* to make additional customization changes that cannot be made through Workspace Properties. For example, you can edit the `.Xdefaults` file using a text editor such as `vi` to make customizations to non-OpenWindows applications or to add C pre-processor macros. Using Workspace Properties does not disturb these customizations.

If you already have a `.Xdefaults` file in your home directory and you do not want to make any customization changes to it, you do not need to remove it. Since the `.OWdefaults` file takes precedence over it, it does not interfere.

Customizing the Workspace Menu

In OpenWindows 3.3, or later versions, you customize the Programs submenu on the workspace menu using Workspace Properties. Prior to OpenWindows 3.3, you did this customization by editing the `.openwin-menu` file in your home directory.

Note – If you do not have a `.openwin-menu` file in your home directory, it is not necessary to do the following procedure. You can customize the workspace menu by using Workspace Properties.

If you do have a `.openwin-menu` file, you must perform the following steps in order to use Workspace Properties to customize your workspace menu.

If you see the following line in your `.openwin-menu` file:

```
"Programs"MENU /usr/openwin/lib/openwin-menu-programs
```

delete it and replace it with this line:

```
"Programs"INCLUDE openwin-menu-programs
```

If your `.openwin-menu` file does not contain the line that needs to be removed and replaced, simply add the substitute line to the `.openwin-menu` file, as shown above.

Adding or substituting this line adds the default Programs menu to your workspace menu. This enables you to customize it using Workspace Properties.

If, by chance, you end up with redundant items in your workspace menu, simply edit them out by removing the redundant lines from `.openwin-menu`.

Making the Transition to Solaris 2.5



This appendix briefly introduces the changes that users and system administrators can expect when making the transition from SunOS 4.x for SPARC systems and Solaris 2.1 for x86 systems.

SPARC – The Solaris 2.5 upgrade option is available if at least one disk attached to the system has a Solaris 2.1 or later root file system. The upgrade option is not available for systems with SunOS 4.1.

x86 – The Solaris upgrade option is not available from Solaris 2.1 to 2.5.

For more detailed information about the transition from SunOS 4.x to Solaris 2.5, and for information about the differences between these two software environments, see *Solaris 1.x to 2.x Transition Guide* and *Source Compatibility Guide*.

For a look at some of the changes between Solaris 2.5 and your previous version, see *Solaris 1.x to 2.x Transition Guide*.

SPARC *Making the Transition from SunOS 4.x*

The Solaris 2.5 environment includes SunOS 5.x system software. The following sections present a brief description of the differences between SunOS 4.x and SunOS 5.x for both users and system administrators.

SPARC *Changes Affecting SunOS 4.x Users*

Some of the more obvious differences between SunOS 4.x releases and the SunOS 5.x releases are:

- Many UNIX commands have changed. For a detailed list, see *Solaris 1.x to 2.x Transition Guide*.
- The printing subsystem has changed. For example:
 - `lp(1)` replaces `lpr`.
 - `lpstat(1)` replaces `lpq`.
 - `cancel(1)` replaces `lprm`.
 - `troff(1)` requires a printer name.
- The mail programs have changed. The SunOS 4.x mailboxes and folders are completely compatible with any of the three Solaris 2.3 mail programs:
 - `mailtool`, the DeskSet environment Multimedia Mail Tool
 - `mail(1)`, a command-line utility
 - `mailx(1)`, a command-line utility
- The location or name of some system files has changed. For example:
 - `/etc/vfstab` replaces `/etc/fstab`.
 - `/var/mail` replaces `/var/spool/mail`.
 - `/platform/*/kernel/unix` replaces `/vmunix`.

For more information on the preceding topics, see *Solaris 1.x to 2.x Transition Guide*.

SPARC Changes Affecting SunOS 4.x System Administrators

Some of the differences you will find in migrating to the SunOS 5.x environment from a SunOS 4.x environment are:

- Solaris 2.5 software can be installed on SPARC systems only from a local or remote CD-ROM drive or from a network.
- Solaris 2.5 software media is distributed in software groups, made up of *packages* and *clusters*, which facilitates installation. For the most up-to-date information on Solaris 2.5 packages use `pkginfo(1)` or `swmtool`.
- Device-naming conventions have changed; disks, for example, are now named as follows:

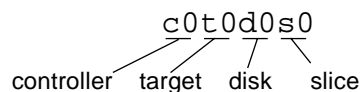


Figure B-1 Device-naming Convention

Note that on some disks (*xy*, *xd*) there is no target component; such disks have names like `c0d0s0`.

- The file system directory structure has changed. For example:
 - The kernel, called `unix`, and its related modules are stored in the `/kernel` directory.
 - The `/opt` directory is a new directory. It is created during installation for storing or mounting optional software applications.
 - The `/devices` directory is a hierarchy of device files, with symbolic links into the `/dev` directory for compatibility with the SunOS 4.x device naming conventions.
 - The `/usr` directory has been restructured.
 - The `terminfo` database replaces `/etc/termcap`.
 - The `/etc/vfstab` file replaces `/etc/fstab`.
 - The `/var/mail` directory replaces `/var/spool/mail`.
 - The `/etc/lp` directory replaces `/etc/printcap`.
 - The Remote File Sharing service (RFS) optional software package has been discontinued since Solaris 2.2.

- The SunOS 5.x kernel is *dynamic*; the user no longer rebuilds or edits the kernel configuration file.
- The kernel can automatically load necessary drivers for new devices added to the system.
- The Solaris 2.5 startup and shutdown procedures have changed:
 - The `init(1M)` command uses different scripts for each run level.
 - The `shutdown` command does not support any of the options available in SunOS 4.1 systems.
 - The `fastboot(1B)` and `fasthalt(1b)` commands are only available using the SunOS/BSD Source Compatibility Package.
- Many commands have changed, as well as the output from commands. Scripts may need to be rewritten. For more information, see *Solaris 1.x to 2.x Transition Guide*.
- NIS+ replaces the NIS, the Network Information Service name service; however, NIS+ uses NIS data, which makes it easier to transition to NIS+.
- Administration Tool (`admintool`), Motif application that allows you to administer your local system, provides management of system database and host information, printers, serial ports, user accounts, and software.
- The print management commands have changed. For a detailed list, see *Solaris 1.x to 2.x Transition Guide*.
- Terminals and modems are controlled through the Service Access Facility (SAF) and System Access Controller (SAC); the `/etc/ttytab` file is gone.

SPARC *Compatibility with SunOS 4.x Releases for SPARC Systems*

The Solaris 2.5 environment provides two packages to ease the transition and migration to the SunOS 5.x system software for SPARC systems:

- The SunOS/BSD Source Compatibility Package
- The SunOS Binary Compatibility Package

If you use these packages, remember that they are a temporary transition aid only for

- Developers who want to compile SunOS 4.x application source code to run in the Solaris 2.5 environment.

- Users who want to run SunOS 4.x-based application binaries that have not yet been ported to run in a SVID-compliant environment such as the Solaris 2.5 environment.

SPARC *The SunOS/BSD Source Compatibility Package*

If this software package is installed, it supports some of the SunOS/BSD commands that are not included in, or have changed in, the SunOS 5.x system software. Application source code that is compliant with the SunOS 4.x environment will compile and run under the Solaris 2.5 environment by using the SunOS/BSD Source Compatibility package.

For specific details, see *Binary Compatibility Guide* and *Source Installation and Media Preparation Guide*.

SPARC *The SunOS Binary Compatibility Package*

OpenWindows and other executable applications that are either dynamically linked or statically linked and written under SunOS 4.1.x¹ are supported in the Solaris 2.5 environment through the SunOS Binary Compatibility Package and the OpenWindows Binary Compatibility Package.

To use these packages, applications written under SunOS 4.x must not:

- Trap directly to the kernel
- Write directly to system files
- Use `/dev/kmem` or `libkvm` routines
- Use unpublished SunOS interfaces
- Rely on non-SunOS drivers

The SunOS/BSD Source Compatibility package must be installed to use the SunOS Binary Compatibility Package.

1. References to the "SunOS 4.1.x" release/environment include the SunOS 4.1 release and all subsequent 4.1 releases: 4.1.1, 4.1.1 RevB, 4.1.2, 4.1.3, and 4.1.3c.

x86 *Making the Transition from Solaris 2.1 for x86*

Some differences exist for users and administrators moving to a Solaris 2.5 system environment from the Solaris 2.1 release. For example, installation procedures follow a different order, there are changes in the way disks are formatted, and printing commands are different.

x86 *Changes affecting Users*

Keyboard mapping for x86 keyboards has changed. For complete key-map table, see Appendix C, “Modifying the Keyboard.”

x86 *Changes affecting System Administrators*

There are differences in installation of Solaris 2.5 software on a networked x86 system:

- `kdmconfig` is called by `sysidconfig` and replaces `devconfig` during installation.
- When `bootparams` database server is queried, if the ethernet and hosts maps are set correctly, installation proceeds without questions. If there are discrepancies, or the system is stand-alone, a series of screens appear asking you to define the keyboard, mouse, and display attached to the system. See `kdmconfig(1M)`.

There are differences in formatting SCSI and IDE disks for x86 systems.

- The `format(1M)` utility is now available to format, label, analyze, and repair SCSI disks. This utility is included with the `addbadsec(1M)`, `diskscan(1M)`, `fdisk(1M)`, and `fmthard(1M)` commands available in the Solaris 2.1 for x86 release. To format IDE disks use the DOS format utility; however to label, analyze and repair IDE disks on x86 systems use the Solaris `format(1M)` utility.

There is a change in the support for parallel PostScript™ printers on x86 systems:

- The `lp` driver has been modified, so that setup for a parallel PostScript printer in x86 systems is now identical to the setup of a serial printer. The only difference is when you need to specify the device name of the port.

- The following files are no longer part of Solaris 2.5:
 - `/etc/lp/fd/ppostio.fd`
 - `/etc/lp/fd/ppostior.fd`
 - `/usr/share/lib/terminfo/P/PPS`
 - `/usr/share/lib/terminfo/P/PPSR`
- The x86 lp driver now takes advantage of added `ioctl`s in `postio`.

x86 *Solaris 2.5 System Administration Tools*

System administration benefits of the Solaris 2.5 release are the result of enhancements to the Solaris system software and the ONC networking protocols and administration applications. For the benefit of x86 users who may not have seen intervening releases, these enhancements are described in the following sections.

x86 *Since the Solaris 2.3 Release*

The following administration features have been enhanced since the release of Solaris 2.3:

- Keyboard, mouse, and display configurations are updated with `kdmconfig`
- `bootparams` names the keyboard, display, and mouse
- Booting sequence is different on x86 machines

x86 *Since the Solaris 2.1 Release*

The following administration features have been enhanced since the release of Solaris 2.1:

- Administration Tool is enhanced to simplify terminal and modem setup.
- Automated Security Enhancement Tool (ASET) enables administrators to easily increase a system's security.
- Dynamic kernel and loadable modules simplify:
 - Kernel management for heterogeneous systems
 - Adding new devices to running systems
 - Adding device drivers without rebuilding the kernel
- NIS+ name service creates subdomains and assigns security to network resources.

Modifying the Keyboard



This appendix provides instructions for remapping your keyboard. It includes remapping options for special keyboard keys. It also provides information on how to disable and enable the Compose key on your keyboard.

For information on remapping your mouse buttons (for example, more convenient left-handed use of the mouse), see the *Solaris User's Guide*.

Disabling/Enabling the Compose Key

x86 – The Compose key is defined to be Ctrl-Shift-F1 on x86 systems.

If you do not use the Compose key, you can disable it so that you do not press it inadvertently. First, find out the keycode for `Multi_key`:

```
$ xmodmap -pk | grep Multi_key
```

Your system displays a line similar to:

```
nn 0xff20 (Multi_key)
```

The important piece of information is the two-digit keycode number at the beginning of the line, represented by *nn*. Use this keycode number to construct the following line in your `.xinitrc` file:

```
xmodmap -e 'keycode nn = NoSymbol'
```

To re-enable the Compose key, comment out the previous line in your `.xinitrc` file and restart the OpenWindows software.

SPARC *Left-Handed Key Remapping*

The key remapping script in this section (provided for the Type-4 and Type-5 keyboards) remaps most of the special keys on the left and right panels of the keyboard (that is, the keypads to the left and right of the main keyboard area).

SPARC – Note the following sections concerning “Left-Handed Key Remapping” apply only to SPARC-based machines.

SPARC *Using the Remapping Script*

Follow these steps to create and use your remapping script:

- 1. Create a file called `lefty.data` using any text editor.**
This can be in any directory. Step 4 must occur in the same directory in which you create this file.
- 2. Type in the script as shown in Table C-1 “The `lefty.data` Script.”.**
Any line with an exclamation point in front of it is a comment line, and does not execute any operation.
- 3. Save the changes and quit the editor.**
- 4. At the prompt, type:**

```
$ xmodmap lefty.data
```

You must be in the same directory as the script file.

- 5. Click a mouse button in the Workspace to make the script take effect.**
Once you have completed these steps you can use the keyboard so the keys are mapped for a left-handed person.

Type the following script into the file `lefty.data`, as described in Step 1.

Table C-1 The `lefty.data` Script

```
!  
! lefty.data  
!  
! Data for xmodmap to set up the left and right function keys for left-handed use on  
! Sun type-4 keyboard. To use this data type the following where <filename> is the  
! name of the file (i.e. lefty-data).  
!  
! xmodmap <filename>  
!  
! The comments below correspond to the keycode assignments following  
! immediately thereafter.  
!  
! swap L2 (Again) with R1 (Pause)  
! swap L3 (Props) with R6 (KP_Multiply)  
! swap L4 (Undo) with R4 (KP_Equal)  
! swap L5 (Front) with R9 (KP_9)  
! swap L6 (Copy) with R7 (KP_7)  
! swap L7 (Open) with R12 (KP_6)  
! swap L8 (Paste) with R10 (Left)  
! swap L9 (Find) with R15 (KP_3)  
! swap L10 (Cut) with R13 (KP_1)  
!  
! chng R3 (Break) to L1 (Stop)  
! chng R2 (Print) to R10 (Left)  
! chng R5 (KP_Divide) to R12 (Right)  
!  
! chng Linefeed to Control-R  
!  
keycode 10 = R1 R1 Pause  
keycode 28 = L2 L2 SunAgain  
keycode 32 = R6 R6 KP_Multiply  
keycode 54 = L3 L3 SunProps  
keycode 33 = R4 R4 KP_Equal  
keycode 52 = L4 L4 SunUndo  
keycode 56 = R9 R9 KP_9 Prior  
keycode 77 = L5 L5 SunFront  
keycode 58 = R7 R7 KP_7 Home
```

Table C-1 The `lefty.data` Script (Continued)

```
keycode 75 = L6 L6 SunCopy
keycode 79 = Right R12 KP_6
keycode 100 = L7 L7 SunOpen
keycode 80 = Left R10 KP_4
keycode 98 = L8 L8 SunPaste
keycode 102 = R15 R15 KP_3 Next
keycode 121 = L9 L9 SunFind
keycode 104 = R13 R13 KP_1 End
keycode 119 = L10 L10 SunCut
keycode 30 = L1 L1 SunStop
keycode 29 = Left R10 KP_4
keycode 53 = Right R12 KP_6
keycode 118 = Control_R
add control = Control_R
```

SPARC *Undoing the Keyboard Remapping*

There are two ways to switch the keys back to their original settings. The first is to exit the OpenWindows software and start it up again. The second method, which is much preferable if you may want to switch the keys back periodically, is to create a second script and initiate it any time you want to switch back.

Follow these instructions to create the second script:

- 1. Use any editor to create a file called `nolefty.data`.**
This must be in the same directory that contains the `lefty.data` script.
- 2. Type in the script as shown in Table C-2 “The `nolefty.data` Script.”.**
Any line with an exclamation point in front of it is a comment line, and does not execute any operation.
- 3. Save the changes and quit the editor.**
- 4. At the prompt, type:**

```
$ xmodmap nolefty.data
```

For the `nolefty.data` file to take effect, you must enter the previous command in the same directory as the script file.

Table C-2 The `nolefty.data` Script

```
!
! nolefty.data
!
! Data for xmodmap to reset the left and right function keys after being set for
! left-handed use on the Sun type-4 keyboard. To use this data type the following
! where <filename> is the name of this file.
!
! xmodmap <filename>
!
!Reassign standard values to left function keys
!
keycode 10 = L2 L2 SunAgain
keycode 32 = L3 L3 SunProps
keycode 33 = L4 L4 SunUndo
keycode 56 = L5 L5 SunFront
keycode 58 = L6 L6 SunCopy
keycode 79 = L7 L7 SunOpen
keycode 80 = L8 L8 SunPaste
keycode 102 = L9 L9 SunFind
keycode 104 = L10 L10 Sun Cut
!
! Reassign standard values to right function keys.
!
keycode 28 = R1 R1 Pause
keycode 29 = R2 R2 Print
keycode 30 = R3 R3 Scroll_Lock Break
keycode 52 = R4 R4 KP_Equal
keycode 53 = R5 R5 KP_Divide
keycode 54 = R6 R6 KP_Multiply
keycode 75 = R7 R7 KP_7 Home
keycode 77 = R9 R9 KP_9 Prior
keycode 98 = Left R10 KP_4
keycode 100 = Right R12 KP_6
keycode 119 = R13 R13 KP_1 End
keycode 121 = R15 R15 KP_3 Next
!
! Reassign the Linefeed key as such and remove from control map.
!
remove control = Control_R
5keycode 118 = Linefeed
```

x86 *Function Key and Control Key Remapping*

You can remap the function keys of an x86 machine so that they function like the Help, Cut, Copy, Paste, Undo, and Front keys on a SPARC keyboard. You can also remap the right Control key to be a Meta key.

x86 – Note the following sections concerning “Function Key Remapping” apply only to x86-based machines.

Once you remap the keys, you cannot use `kdmconfig` to change setup or video information without first undoing the keyboard remapping.

x86 *Using the Remapping Script*

Follow these steps to create and use your remapping script:

1. **Create a file in your home directory called `fkeys` using any text editor.**
2. **Type in the script as shown in Table C-3.**
3. **Save the changes and quit the editor.**
4. **At the prompt, type**

```
$ xmodmap fkeys
```

You must be in the same directory as the script file.

5. **Click a mouse button in the Workspace to make the script take effect.**
Once you have completed these steps you can use the function keys as Help, Cut, Copy, Paste, Undo, and Front keys.

Type the following script into the file `fkeys`, as described in Step 1.

Table C-3 The `fkeys` Script

```
keysym F2 = L10  
keysym F3 = L6  
keysym F4 = L8  
keysym F5 = L9
```

Table C-3 The fkeys Script (Continued)

```

keysym F8 = L4
keysym F9 = L5

remove control = Control_R
keycode 0x47 = Meta_R
add mod1 = Meta_R

```

x86 Undoing the Keyboard Remapping

There are two ways to switch the keys back to their original settings. The first is to exit the OpenWindows software and start it up again. The second method, which is preferable, is to create a second script and initiate it any time you want to switch back.

Follow these instructions to create the second script:

1. **Use any editor to create a file called `normal`.**
This file must be in the same directory that contains the `fkeys` script.
2. **Type in the script as shown in Table C-4.**
3. **Save the changes and quit the editor.**
4. **At the prompt, type:**

```
$ xmodmap normal
```

You must type the command in the same directory as the script file.

Type the following script into the file `normal`, as described in Step 1.

Table C-4 The `normal` Script

```

keycode 8 = grave asciitilde
keycode 9 = 1 exclam
keycode 10 = 2 at
keycode 11 = 3 numbersign
keycode 12 = 4 dollar
keycode 13 = 5 percent
keycode 14 = 6 asciicircum

```

Table C-4 The normal Script (Continued)

keycode	15	=	7	ampersand	
keycode	16	=	8	asterisk	
keycode	17	=	9	parenleft	
keycode	18	=	0	parenright	
keycode	19	=	minus	underscore	
keycode	20	=	equal	plus	
keycode	21	=			
keycode	22	=	BackSpace		
keycode	23	=	Tab		
keycode	24	=	Q		
keycode	25	=	W		
keycode	26	=	E		
keycode	27	=	R		
keycode	28	=	T		
keycode	29	=	Y		
keycode	30	=	U		
keycode	31	=	I		
keycode	32	=	O		
keycode	33	=	P		
keycode	34	=	bracketleft	braceleft	
keycode	35	=	bracketright	braceright	
keycode	36	=	backslash	bar	brokenbar
keycode	37	=	Caps_Lock		
keycode	38	=	A		
keycode	39	=	S		
keycode	40	=	D		
keycode	41	=	F		
keycode	42	=	G		
keycode	43	=	H		
keycode	44	=	J		
keycode	45	=	K		
keycode	46	=	L		
keycode	47	=	semicolon	colon	
keycode	48	=	apostrophe	quotedbl	
keycode	49	=			
keycode	50	=	Return		
keycode	51	=	Shift_L		
keycode	52	=			
keycode	53	=	Z		
keycode	54	=	X		
keycode	55	=	C		
keycode	56	=	V		

Table C-4 The normal Script (Continued)

keycode	57	=	B
keycode	58	=	N
keycode	59	=	M
keycode	60	=	comma less
keycode	61	=	period greater
keycode	62	=	slash question
keycode	63	=	
keycode	64	=	Shift_R
keycode	65	=	Control_L
keycode	66	=	
keycode	67	=	Alt_L
keycode	68	=	space
keycode	69	=	Alt_R
keycode	70	=	
keycode	71	=	Control_R
keycode	72	=	
keycode	73	=	
keycode	74	=	
keycode	75	=	
keycode	76	=	
keycode	77	=	
keycode	78	=	
keycode	79	=	
keycode	80	=	
keycode	81	=	
keycode	82	=	Insert
keycode	83	=	Delete
keycode	84	=	
keycode	85	=	
keycode	86	=	Left
keycode	87	=	Home
keycode	88	=	End
keycode	89	=	
keycode	90	=	Up
keycode	91	=	Down
keycode	92	=	Prior
keycode	93	=	Next
keycode	94	=	
keycode	95	=	
keycode	96	=	Right
keycode	97	=	Num_Lock
keycode	98	=	Home KP_7 KP_7
keycode	99	=	Left KP_4 KP_4

Table C-4 The normal Script (Continued)

```
keycode 100 = End KP_1 KP_1
keycode 101 =
keycode 102 = KP_Divide
keycode 103 = Up KP_8 KP_8
keycode 104 = KP_5 KP_5 KP_5
keycode 105 = Down KP_2 KP_2
keycode 106 = KP_Insert KP_0 KP_0
keycode 107 = KP_Multiply
keycode 108 = Prior KP_9 KP_9
keycode 109 = Right KP_6 KP_6
keycode 110 = Next KP_3 KP_3
keycode 111 = Delete KP_Decimal KP_Decimal
keycode 112 = KP_Subtract
keycode 113 = KP_Add
keycode 114 =
keycode 115 = KP_Enter
keycode 116 =
keycode 117 = Escape
keycode 118 =
keycode 119 = F1
keycode 120 = F2
keycode 121 = F3
keycode 122 = F4
keycode 123 = F5
keycode 124 = F6
keycode 125 = F7
keycode 126 = F8
keycode 127 = F9
keycode 128 = F10
keycode 129 = SunF36
keycode 130 = SunF37
keycode 131 = Print SunSys_Req
keycode 132 = Scroll_Lock
keycode 133 = Pause Break
keycode 134 =
keycode 135 = Multi_key
keycode 136 = Mode_switch
```

Running Networked Applications



This appendix describes an advanced feature of the OpenWindows environment that enables you to run applications that reside on another machine on your network.

Note – Most users do not need to read this appendix. If you want to explore the possibility of running networked applications, you can talk to your system administrator about the special applications that may be available on your network.

Normally in the OpenWindows environment all the applications on your screen (such as Mail Tool and Calendar Manager) are programs that are running on your local machine. However, if your workstation is part of a network, you can run applications on another machine and display them on your local screen. Running an application in this manner saves computing cycles on your local machine, and gives you access to an entire network of applications.

This appendix describes the simplest scenario for running an application on a remote machine and displaying it on your local screen. Because your computing environment may vary, you will need to be flexible in following these instructions. The section “More About Security,” provides additional information on the complexities of running networked applications.

To use the following procedure to run a remote application, you must meet these requirements:

- You must have access rights to the remote machine.
- Your home directory must be NFS-mountable on the remote machine.
- The application and appropriate libraries must be installed on the remote machine, or *host*.

Contact your system administrator if you do not understand these requirements.

Using `rlogin` to Run a Networked Application

The key to running a networked application on a remote machine is to make sure your environment variables are set correctly:

- The `HOME` environment variable in your shell on the remote machine must be set to your home directory.
- The `DISPLAY` environment variable in your shell on the remote machine must be set to your local screen.
- If the OpenWindows libraries have not been installed in the standard `/usr/lib` or `/usr/local` shared library directories, you must set the `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` environment variable to the appropriate directory (`/usr/openwin/lib`).

Below is an example of running a Command Tool on a remote machine using `rlogin`. In this example, the home directory is mounted on the remote machine on `/home/mydirectory`, and the OpenWindows software is located

in `/usr/openwin` on the remote machine. Change the variables, *mydirectory* and *mymachine* as appropriate for your arrangement. Also, replace `cmdtool`, with the name of the application you want to run.

```
$ rlogin remotemachine
.
.
( The following commands are executed on the remote machine. )
.
.
$ HOME=/home/mydirectory
$ DISPLAY=mymachine:0
$ LD_LIBRARY_PATH=/usr/openwin/lib
$ /usr/openwin/bin/cmdtool &
```

After you enter the last line, a Command Tool window appears on your screen. Even though you interact with this application just as you would with any other application on your screen, the Command Tool application itself is actually running on the remote machine.

Although there is no particular advantage to running a Command Tool in this way (it is already locally available on your machine and does not use a significant amount of your computing resources), this example shows how to run any remote application that may be available to you.

More About Security

This section describes some fundamentals of network security that you may find useful as you run applications across the network, including:

- User-based and host-based access control mechanisms
- The `MIT-MAGIC-COOKIE-1` and `SUN-DES-1` authorization protocols
- When and how to change a server's access control
- How to run applications remotely, or locally as a different user

Who Should Read this Section

The default security configuration in the OpenWindows Version 3.3 software, or later versions, does not need to be changed unless you run applications in any of the following configurations:

- You run an application linked with versions of `Xlib` or `libcups` older than the OpenWindows Version 2 software or `X11R4`.
- You run an application that is statically linked to OpenWindows Version 2 libraries and you want to use the `SUN-DES-1` authorization protocol.
- You run an application on a remote server.

Access Control Mechanisms

An access control mechanism controls which clients or applications have access to the X11 server. Only properly authorized clients can connect to the server; all others are denied access, and are terminated with the following error message.

```
Xlib: connection to hostname refused by server
Xlib: Client is not authorized to connect to server
```

The connection attempt logs to the server console as:

```
AUDIT: <Date Time Year>: X: client 6 rejected from IP 129.144.152.193 port 3485
Auth name: MIT-MAGIC-COOKIE-1
```

There are two different types of access control mechanisms: *user-based* and *host-based*. (That is, one mechanism grants access to a particular user's account, while the other grants access to a particular *host*, or machine.) Unless the `-noauth` option is used with `openwin`, both the user-based access control mechanism and the host-based access control mechanism are active. For more information see "Manipulating Access to the Server" in this chapter.

User-Based Access

A user-based, or authorization-based mechanism allows you to give access explicitly to a particular user on any host machine. The user's client passes authorization data to the server. If the data match the server's authorization data, the user is allowed access.

Host-Based Access

A host-based mechanism is a general purpose mechanism. It allows you to give access to a particular host, in which all users on that host can connect to the server. This is a weaker form of access control: if that host has access to the server, all users on that host are allowed to connect to the server.

The Solaris environment provides the host-based mechanism for backward compatibility. Applications linked with versions of `Xlib` or `libcups` older than OpenWindows Version 2 software or X11R4 do not recognize the new user-based access control mechanism. To enable these applications to connect to the server, a user must either switch to the host-based mechanism, or relink with the newer versions of `Xlib` and `libcups`.

Note – If possible, clients linked with older versions of `Xlib` or `libcups` should be relinked with newer versions of these libraries to enable them to connect to the server with the new user-based access control mechanism.

Authorization Protocols

Two authorization protocols are supported in this version of the OpenWindows software: `MIT-MAGIC-COOKIE-1` and `SUN-DES-1`. They differ in the authorization data used; they are similar in the access control mechanism used. At any time, the server implements only one protocol. The `MIT-MAGIC-COOKIE-1` protocol using the user-based mechanism is the default in the OpenWindows software.

`MIT-MAGIC-COOKIE-1`

The `MIT-MAGIC-COOKIE-1` authorization protocol was developed by the Massachusetts Institute of Technology. At server start-up, a *magic cookie* is created for the server and the user who started the system. On every

connection attempt, the user's client sends the magic cookie to the server as part of the connection packet. This magic cookie is compared with the servers' magic cookie. The connection is allowed if the magic cookies match, or denied if they do not match.

SUN-DES-1

The SUN-DES-1 authorization protocol, developed by Sun Microsystems, is based on Secure RPC (Remote Procedure Call) and requires DES (Data Encryption Software) support. The authorization information is the machine-independent netname, or network name, of a user. This information is encrypted and sent to the server as part of the connection packet. The server decrypts the information, and if the netname is known, allows the connection.

This protocol provides a higher level of security than the MIT-MAGIC-COOKIE-1 protocol. There is no way for another user to use your machine independent netname to access a server, but it is possible for another user to use the magic cookie to access a server.

This protocol is available only in libraries in the OpenWindows Version 3 and later environments. Any applications built with static libraries, in particular Xlib, in environments prior to OpenWindows Version 3 cannot use this authorization protocol.

"Allowing Access When Using SUN-DES-1," in this chapter, describes how to allow another user access to your server by adding their netname to your server's access list.

Changing the Default Authorization Protocol

The default authorization protocol, MIT-MAGIC-COOKIE-1, can be changed to SUN-DES-1, the other supported authorization protocol, or to no user-based access mechanism at all. You change the default by supplying options with the `openwin` command. For example, to change the default from MIT-MAGIC-COOKIE-1 to SUN-DES-1, start the OpenWindows software as follows:

```
example% openwin -auth sun-des
```


If you must run the OpenWindows software without the user-based access mechanism, use the `-noauth` command line option:

```
example% openwin -noauth
```



Caution – Using `-noauth` weakens security. It is equivalent to running the OpenWindows software with the host-based access control mechanism only; the server inactivates the user-based access control mechanism. Anyone that can run applications on your local machine will be allowed access to your server.

Manipulating Access to the Server

Unless the `-noauth` option is used with `openwin` (see “Changing the Default Authorization Protocol”), both the user-based access control mechanism and the host-based access control mechanism are active. The server first checks the user-based mechanism, then the host-based mechanism. The default security configuration uses `MIT-MAGIC-COOKIE-1` as the user-based mechanism, and an empty list for the host-based mechanism. Since the host-based list is empty, only the user-based mechanism is effectively active. Using the `-noauth` option instructs the server to inactivate the user-based access control mechanism, and initializes the host-based list by adding the local host.

You can use either of two programs to change a server’s access control mechanism: `xhost` and `xauth`. For more information, see these `man` pages. These programs access two binary files created by the authorization protocol. These files contain session-specific authorization data. One file is for server internal use only. The other file is located in the user’s `$HOME` directory:

- `.Xauthority` Client Authority file

Use the `xhost` program to change the host-based access list in the server. You can add hosts to, or delete hosts from the access list. If you are starting with the default configuration — an empty host-based access list — and use `xhost` to add a machine name, you will lower the level of security. The server will allow access to the host you added, as well as to any user specifying the default authorization protocol. See “Host-Based Access” for an explanation of why the host-based access control mechanism is considered a lower level of security.

The `xauth` program accesses the authorization protocol data in the `.Xauthority` client file. You can extract this data from your `.Xauthority` file so that another user can merge the data into their `.Xauthority` file, thus allowing them access to your server, or to the server to which you connect.

See “Allowing Access When Using MIT-MAGIC-COOKIE-1” for examples of how to use `xhost` and `xauth`.

Client Authority File

The client authority file is `.Xauthority`. It contains entries of the form:

<code>connection-protocol</code>	<code>auth-protocol</code>	<code>auth-data</code>
----------------------------------	----------------------------	------------------------

By default, `.Xauthority` contains MIT-MAGIC-COOKIE-1 as the *auth-protocol*, and entries for the local display only as the *connection-protocol* and *auth-data*. For example, on host *anyhost*, the `.Xauthority` file may contain the following entries:

<code>anyhost:0</code>	<code>MIT-MAGIC-COOKIE-1</code>	<code>82744f2c4850b03fce7ae47176e75</code>
<code>localhost:0</code>	<code>MIT-MAGIC-COOKIE-1</code>	<code>82744f2c4850b03fce7ae47176e75</code>
<code>anyhost/unix:0</code>	<code>MIT-MAGIC-COOKIE-1</code>	<code>82744f2c4850b03fce7ae47176e75</code>

When the client starts up, an entry corresponding to the *connection-protocol* is read from `.Xauthority`, and the *auth-protocol* and *auth-data* are sent to the server as part of the connection packet. In the default configuration, `xhost` returns empty host-based access lists and state that authorization is enabled.

If you have changed the authorization protocol from the default to SUN-DES-1 the entries in `.Xauthority` contain SUN-DES-1 as the *auth-protocol* and the netname of the user as *auth-data*. The netname is in the following form:

<code>unix.userid@NISdomainname</code>
--

For example, on host, *anyhost* the `.Xauthority` file may contain the following entries, where `unix.15339@EBB.Eng.Sun.COM` is the machine-independent netname of the user:

```
anyhost:0      SUN-DES-1      "unix.15339@EBB.Eng.Sun.COM"
localhost:0    SUN-DES-1      "unix.15339@EBB.Eng.Sun.COM"
anyhost/unix:0 SUN-DES-1      "unix.15339@EBB.Eng.Sun.COM"
```

Note – If you do not know your network name, or machine independent netname, ask your system administrator.

Allowing Access When Using MIT-MAGIC-COOKIE-1

If you are using the MIT-MAGIC-COOKIE-1 authorization protocol, follow these steps to allow another user access to your server:

- 1. On the machine running the server, use `xauth` to extract an entry corresponding to `hostname:0` into a file.**

For this example, *hostname* is *anyhost* and the file is *xauth.info*:

```
myhost% /usr/openwin/bin/xauth nextract - anyhost:0 > $HOME/xauth.info
```

- 2. Send the file containing the entry to the user requesting access (using Mail Tool, `rcp` or some other file transfer method).**

Note – Mailing the file containing your authorization information is a safer method than using `rcp`. If you do use `rcp`, do *not* place the file in a directory that is easily accessible by another user.

- 3. The other user must merge the entry into his/her `.Xauthority` file.**

For this example, *userhost* merges `xauth.info` into the other user's `.Xauthority` file:

```
userhost% /usr/openwin/bin/xauth nmerge - < xauth.info
```

Note – The *auth-data* is session-specific; therefore, it is valid only as long as the server is not restarted.

Allowing Access When Using SUN-DES-1

If you are using the SUN-DES-1 authorization protocol, follow these steps to allow another user access to your server:

- 1. On the machine running the server, use `xhost` to make the new user known to the server.**

For this example, to allow new user *somebody* to run on *myhost*:

```
myhost% xhost + somebody@
```

- 2. The new user must use `xauth` to add the entry into their `.Xauthority` file.**

For this example, the new user's machine independent netname is `unix.15339@EBB.Eng.Sun.COM`. Note that this command should be typed on one line with no carriage return. After the pipe symbol, type a space followed by the remainder of the command.

```
userhost% echo 'add myhost:0 SUN-DES-1 "unix.15339@EBB.Eng.Sun.COM"' | $OPENWINHOME/bin/xauth
```

Running Clients Remotely, or Locally as Another User

X clients use the value of the `DISPLAY` environment variable to get the name of the server to which they should connect.

To run clients remotely, or locally as another user, follow these steps:

- 1. On the machine running the server, allow another user access.**
Depending on which authorization protocol you use, follow the steps outlined in either "Allowing Access When Using MIT-MAGIC-COOKIE-1" or "Allowing Access When Using SUN-DES-1."

2. Set DISPLAY to the name of the host running the server.

For this example, the host is *remotehost*:

```
myhost% setenv DISPLAY remotehost:0
```

3. Run the client program as shown.

```
myhost% client_program&
```

The client is displayed on the remote machine, *remotehost*.

≡ *D*

SPARC — DECnet Internetworking (DNI)



This appendix describes how to internetwork the OpenWindows environment and the DECwindows™ environment via the NSP DECnet transport protocol.

SPARC - Note that this whole chapter concerning “DECnet Internetworking” applies only to SPARC-based machines. DECnet internetworking is also available only with 8.x DNI.

There are two DNI scenarios:

- Running an X11 client on a VAX system (under the VMS® operating system) and displaying the client’s window on an OpenWindows machine
- Running an X11 client on an OpenWindows machine and displaying the client’s window on a VAX system

These two scenarios are described in the following sections after an initial section on how to set up the DNI software for either scenario.

Setting Up DECnet Internetworking

To set up DECnet internetworking, follow these steps:

1. Enable a connection via DNI.

The OpenWindows server and client libraries use a dynamically loadable version of the DNI transport library `libdni`. In order for the server and client libraries to load `libdni` you must set the environment variable `DNI_X_ENABLE` to the directory where `libdni.so` is installed.

The example below assumes you loaded DNI via `pkgadd` in the default location:

```
$ DNI_X_ENABLE=/opt/SUNWconn/dni/lib
```

2. Start the OpenWindows server.

By default, the OpenWindows server supports “MIT-MAGIC-COOKIE” security. This security mechanism is user-specific, rather than host-specific — you decide which users may connect to the server instead of which machines may connect to the server. In the default mode, the `xhost` command returns an empty list, and states only that security is turned on. You can turn off this security mode (and revert to the security mode of previous OpenWindows server versions) by using the `-noauth` option with the `openwin` command.

```
$ openwin -noauth
```

3. Request the owner of the machine running the OpenWindows software to use the `xhost` command to give DEC® VAX® permission to have an X11 connection to the OpenWindows server.

In order for X11 clients to connect to the OpenWindows server through the DNI software, the DECnet node addresses must be mapped to their DECnet node names. You do this by creating and initializing the NCP database. This must also be done on the DEC VAX system.

```
$ xhost decvax::
```

The double colon specifies the DECNet transport.

Displaying a Remote Client on an OpenWindows Machine

You can run X11 clients from VMS by using the SunLink DNI `dnilogin` command to log into the VAX system. First, set the environment variable `DISPLAY` on your local machine to be the X11 server on the remote machine. Then run an X11 client by entering the name of the client, represented here by `x11_client`. (See the *VMS DECwindows User's Guide, Running Applications Across the Network* for more information on using the VMS operating system.)

For example:

```
$ dnilogin decvax
.
.
.
$ define DECW$DISPLAY OW_machine::0
$ spawn/nowait run x11_client
```

Displaying a Remote Client on a VAX

You can run X11 clients on an OpenWindows machine and display them on a DECwindows server by setting the `DISPLAY` variable to the remote VAX system.

Before you can run any of the X11 clients you must compile and install the OpenWindows fonts in the DECwindows server. These fonts are available in the X11R5 release or in the optional font package with the OpenWindows software. Follow these steps to install the proper fonts in the DECwindows server:

- 1. Install the optional OpenWindows font sources (of the font sources from the X11R5 release) on the OpenWindows machine.**
- 2. See the *Solaris X Window System Developer's Guide* for font installation instructions.**
- 3. Copy the font sources to a directory on the VAX system.**

```
$ cd /usr/openwin/share/src/fonts/misc
$ dnicp *.bdf `decvax::[vaxdir]`
```

4. Compile the cursor fonts on the VAX system.

This results in files such as: `olcursor.decw$font;1`
`olglyph10.decw$font;1...`

```
$ font olcursor.bdf
$ font olglyph10.bdf
...
```

5. Copy the fonts to the `sysfont` directory:

```
$ set def sys$sysroot:[sysfont.decw.user_cursor16]
$ copy [vaxdir]olcursor.decw$font;1 *
```

Note – You must be logged in as “system” on the DEC VAX system to copy the fonts to the `sysfont` directory.

6. You must also perform steps 2-4 for the rest of the cursor fonts and for the **Lucida fonts** in `/usr/openwin/share/src/fonts/75dpi` and `/usr/openwin/share/src/fonts/100dpi`.

Note – The Lucida fonts should be installed in `sys$sysroot:[sysfont.decw.user_75dpi]` and `sys$sysroot:[sysfont.decw.user_100dpi]`.

The following list shows the minimum working set of fonts needed to be installed in order to run the OpenWindows DeskSet tools. If you are using default fonts for the applications you should only have to install these fonts. You can, however, install more fonts as needed.

- `olcursor.bdf`
- `olglyph10.bdf`
- `olglyph12.bdf`
- `olglyph14.bdf`
- `olglyph19.bdf`
- `luBS08.bdf`
- `luBS10.bdf`
- `luBS12.bdf`
- `luBS14.bdf`

- luRS08.bdf
- luRS10.bdf
- luFS12.bdf
- lutBs12.bdf
- lutRS10.bdf
- lutRS12.bdf

7. Restart the DECwindows server.

8. You can verify that the fonts were installed by listing the available fonts in the DECwindows server:

```
$ DISPLAY=decvax::0
$ xlsfonts | grep Sun      (Cursor fonts)
$ xlsfonts | grep Lucida
```

9. Make sure you have given the OpenWindows node permission to display on the DECwindows server by using the Security Menu in the DECwindows Session Manager.

10. Run an X11 application (for example, an OpenWindows DeskSet tool).

```
$ DISPLAY=decvax::0
$ mailtool
```

Note - DNI_X_ENABLE must be set to the location of the DNI transport library libdni. See Step 1 under “Setting Up DECnet Internetworking,” in this chapter.

If an error message such as the one below is printed, you need to install that font in the DECwindows server in order to run the application.

```
XView warning: Cannot load font '-b&h-lucida-medium-r-*-***-
80-***-***-***' (Font package)
```

This error message means font luRS10.bdf needs to be installed.

See the *Solaris X Window System Developer's Guide* for more information on fonts.

Managing Your System



Solaris 2.5 includes a new version of Admintool, which is a graphical user interface for performing several administration tasks. Using Admintool, you can do the following on your system:

- **Manage user accounts**—You can use Admintool to add, delete, or modify user accounts. The Admintool software makes appropriate changes in the system's `/etc/passwd` file.
- **Manage groups**—You can use Admintool to add, delete, modify groups. The Admintool software makes appropriate changes in the system's `/etc/group` file.
- **Manage hosts**—You can use Admintool to add, delete, modify hosts. The Admintool software makes appropriate changes in the system's `/etc/inet/hosts` file.
- **Manage printers**—You can use Admintool to add access to a printer, delete access to a printer, or modify a systems' printer setup. The Admintool software makes appropriate changes to the system's `/etc/lp` directory.
- **Manage serial port services**—You can use Admintool to enable and disable serial port services. Admintool provides templates for common terminal and modem configurations, enabling you to set up the software services necessary to use a modem or terminal attached to a system's serial port.
- **Manage software**—You can use Admintool to add or remove software. Admintool adds software from a product CD or from a hard disk to an installed, running system. It also removes software from an installed, running system.

Note – Admintool modifies files on the local system—the system on which Admintool is running. It does *not* modify or update global network databases such as NIS or NIS+.

Starting Admintool

This section shows basic information about starting Admintool, and specific information that might help when using Admintool to manage hosts, printers, and serial ports.

The first task you do with Admintool is to make yourself a member of the UNIX sysadmin group (also called group 14, because the sysadmin group by default has 14 as its group ID number). Once you are a member of the sysadmin group, you can log in as your normal user account—instead of having to log in as root—to perform local system management tasks with Admintool.

To make yourself a member of the sysadmin group, follow the instructions on page 219.

To start the Admintool software, follow these steps.

- 1. Log in to the system.**

- 2. Become root.**

Unless you are a member of the special UNIX sysadmin group (GID 14), you must become root on your system to use Admintool. Root is a system user with special permission to modify system files.

Use the `su` command to become root:

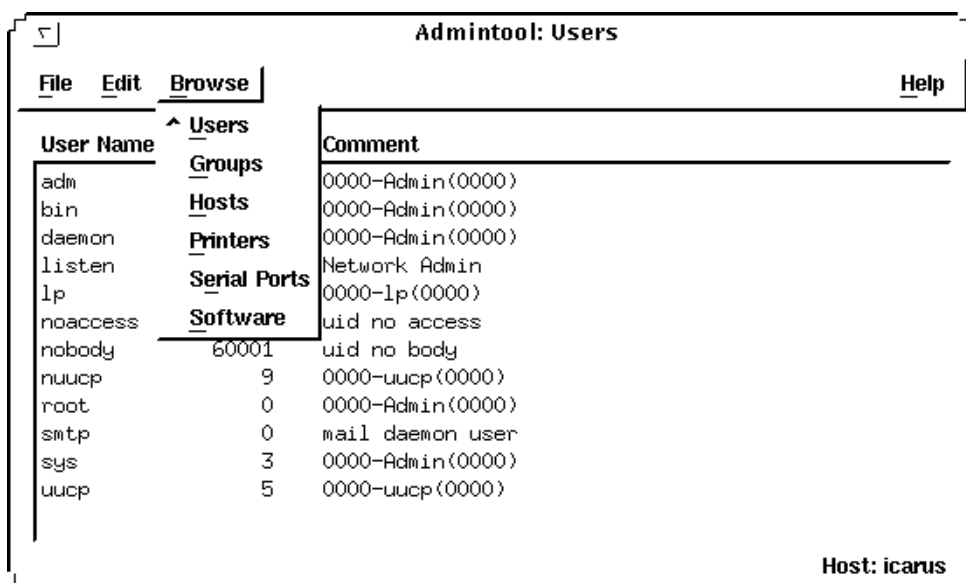
```
$ su
Password:      (enter the root password here)
#
```

If the root account is password protected, you need to know the root password. If the root account is not password protected, you can simply press Return at the Password prompt. If you do not know the root password for your system, contact a system administrator at your site for help.

3. Start Admintool.

```
# Admintool &
```

4. If you are not already a member of the sysadmin group, see [Adding Yourself to the sysadmin Group](#) on page 219.
5. Use the Browse menu option to select the type of work you want to do with Admintool. You can select Users, Groups, Hosts, Printers, Serial Ports, and Software, as illustrated in the next screen.



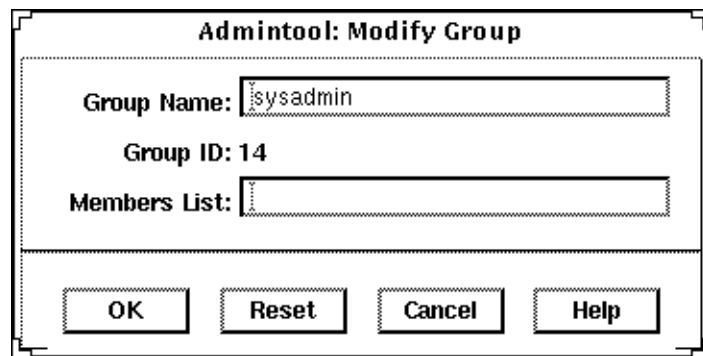
Adding Yourself to the sysadmin Group

To add yourself to the sysadmin group, follow these steps:

1. Log in to the system and become root.
2. Start Admintool.
3. Select Groups from the Browse menu.
4. Click on sysadmin in the Admintool: Groups window.

5. Select **Modify** from the **Edit** menu.

6. Add your user account name to the **Members List**.



Note – When entering names in the **Members Lists**, separate names with a comma, but no spaces, for example: cathy,brett,joan

7. Click on **OK**.

This adds you to the **sysadmin** group. After you are member of the **sysadmin** group, you can start **Admintool** and manage your system without having to log in as **root**.

Using Admintool to Perform Common Tasks

You can perform most local system administration tasks by using **Admintool**. It includes an on-line help system that answers basic questions you might have about completing any given task. However, some tasks have special requirements or involve setting up peripheral hardware. This section provides overview information about those tasks requiring special knowledge or setup.

About Managing Hosts

You can use **Admintool** to define remote systems that you want to access. Using **Admintool** to add a host enables you to log in remotely to another system by using its host name. (Without an entry in the `/etc/hosts` file, you would have to log in remotely to another system by using its IP address.)



Caution – If you use the Admintool to add a host to your local system and your site uses a network name service such as NIS or NIS+, Admintool host operations may not have the desired effect. This is because information in the network name service will take precedence over the information in the local `/etc/hosts` file, which is where Admintool updates information. If you want your Admintool operation to take precedence over information in the network name service database, see your system administrator.

About Managing Printers

You can use Admintool to enable your system to access a printer that is either attached to your system or available on your site's network. You can connect the printer to the system and turn the power on before or after using the Admintool to enable access to that printer. Connecting a printer to your system generally involves the following steps:

- Physically connecting the printer to the system
- Setting any required switches and configuring the baud rate, port, and other settings on the printer, if necessary. (See the printer vendor's manual and your system's hardware installation manual for information about switch settings and cabling requirements.) You usually connect printer cables to a serial port, but in some cases, depending on the requirements of the printer involved, you can use a parallel port.
- Plugging the printer into a power outlet.
- Logging in to the system and become root.
- Starting Admintool and select Printers from Browse menu to update local system files necessary to use the printer.

For detailed information about installing and managing printers, see the *System Administration Guide, Volume 2*, which is part of the *Solaris 2.5 System Administrator AnswerBook*.

About Managing Serial Ports

A *modem* is a device that enables your system to transmit and receive information over telephone lines. Modems are typically plugged into serial ports, so you need to set up your system's serial port with Admintool to use a modem. You can connect the modem to the system and turn the power on before or after using the Admintool to enable access to that modem.

Connecting a modem to your system generally involves the following steps:

- Physically connecting the modem to the system, or installing it (if you have a modem card).
- Setting any required switches and configuring the baud rate, port, and other settings on the modem, if necessary. (Consult the modem vendor's documentation and the installation documentation for your system for information you may need to perform these tasks.)
- Plugging the modem or its adapter into a power outlet, if required.
- Logging in to the system.
- Starting Admintool and selecting Serial Ports from the Browse menu to update the local system files necessary to use a modem.

For additional information about installing and configuring modems, see the *System Administration Guide, Volume 2*, which is part of the *Solaris 2.5 System Administrator AnswerBook*.

Using PCMCIA Cards



Introduction

Personal Computer Memory Card International Association (PCMCIA) cards are rugged, credit card-sized, user-installable devices.

You can use PCMCIA memory cards in the same way as a diskette, but you can store much larger amounts of data on a PCMCIA memory card.

PCMCIA serial and modem cards provide a convenient way to add an RS-232 interface or data/fax modem functionality to your workstation.

PCMCIA cards are available from many vendors. Check with your SunServiceSM provider or the PCMCIA card vendor to determine if a device is compatible with your workstation.

This appendix contains the following sections:

- Using a PCMCIA Memory Card
- Copying Files with the tar Command
- Copying Files with Volume Management Enabled
- Copying Files with Volume Management Disabled
- Using a PCMCIA Serial/ModemCard

Support Requirements

PCMCIA memory and PCMCIA serial/modem cards must be compliant with PCMCIA release 2.1 or higher.

This Solaris release supports SRAM (Non-Volatile Static Random Access Memory), DRAM (Dynamic Random Access Memory), and MROM (Memory Read-Only Memory) PCMCIA memory cards.

Note – This release does not support PCMCIA FLASH, EEPROM, and OTP (One-Time Programmable) PROM cards.

Specifically, this software release supports PCMCIA memory cards that have:

- Card Information Structure (CIS)
- Densities ranging from 512 Kbytes to 64 Mbytes
- An MS-DOS[®] file system and a UNIX file system

Other Information Sources

Refer to the *Hardware Platform Guide* and other documents that accompanied the Solaris software for your system to determine if there are any special installation instructions for the PCMCIA device you want to use.

Using a PCMCIA Memory Card

This section describes general use of PCMCIA Memory Cards, such as protecting any data on them from being accidentally deleted by enabling the write-protect mode, as described in the section titled “Enabling Write-Protect Mode” on page 226.

File Copying Methods

The three sections that follow describe how to format and copy files from a PCMCIA memory card to a hard disk or from a hard disk to a PCMCIA memory card by the three available methods:

- `tar`, `cpio`, or the `dump/restore` commands.

To use the `tar` command to copy files, go to “Copying Files with the `tar` Command” on page 227. (See the man pages for further information on how to use the `cpio` or the `dump/restore` commands.)

- Volume Management enabled

To copy files with Volume Management enabled, go to “Copying Files with Volume Management Enabled” on page 232.

- Volume Management disabled

To copy files with Volume Management disabled, go to “Copying Files with Volume Management Disabled” on page 239.

Write-Protect Mode

You can protect data on a PCMCIA memory card from being accidentally deleted by enabling the write-protect mode. As soon as you enable the write-protect mode on a PCMCIA memory card, you are no longer able to copy any data until you disable the write-protect mode.

▼ Enabling Write-Protect Mode

- ◆ Using a fine-tipped tool (such as a screwdriver), slide the write-protect switch toward the edge of the PCMCIA memory card, as shown in Figure G-1 to enable the write-protect mode.

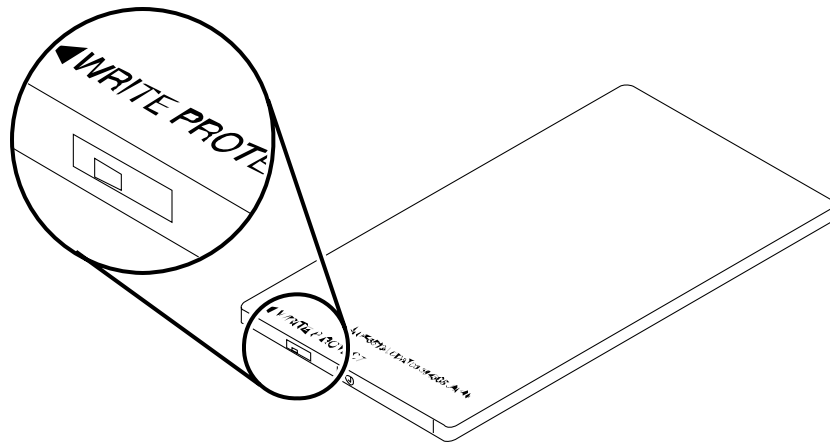


Figure G-1 Enabling Write-Protect Mode

▼ Disabling Write-Protect Mode

- ◆ Using a fine-tipped tool (such as a screwdriver), slide the write-protect switch away from the edge of the PCMCIA memory card, to disable the write-protect mode.

PCMCIA Memory Cards and Power Management's Resume/Suspend Feature

This section provides additional information for systems that have PCMCIA cards and the Power Management software installed. For more information on Power Management, refer to the *Using Power Management*.



Caution – Do not insert or remove a PCMCIA card while your system is suspending or resuming. The PCMCIA card will not be recognized after the resume operation.

If a PCMCIA memory card is managed by Volume Management and the system is suspended, the PCMCIA memory card is automatically unmounted. When the system is resumed, any PCMCIA memory card with a valid file system that is managed by Volume Management is automatically remounted.

If Volume Management is disabled and a PCMCIA card is manually mounted when the system is suspended, the PCMCIA memory card is automatically unmounted. When the system resumes, the PCMCIA memory card is not automatically remounted. If you want to have the PCMCIA memory card mounted again, you must manually remount.

Copying Files with the `tar` Command

This is the first of three sections that describe how to format and copy files from a PCMCIA memory card to a hard disk or from a hard disk to a PCMCIA memory card.

Note – See the man pages for further information on how to use the `cpio` or the `dump/restore` commands.

This section describes the following tasks:

- Formatting a PCMCIA Memory Card
- Displaying file names
- Copying files

▼ Formatting a PCMCIA Memory Card

Before you can use a PCMCIA memory card, you may need to format it. The `fdformat` utility allows you to format both diskettes and PCMCIA memory cards.



Caution – Formatting deletes any data that may already be resident on a PCMCIA memory card.

To format a PCMCIA memory card:

◆ **Type:**

```
% fdformat option device_name
```

Note – The `format` utility cannot be used with PCMCIA memory cards. Only the `fdformat` utility will work.

Table G-1 lists the available options for the `fdformat` utility.

Table G-1 `fdformat` Utility Options

Option	Description
-U	Unmounts the PCMCIA memory card
-d	Installs an MS-DOS file system (UNIX file system is the default)
-f	Does not display confirmation messages before starting to format
-q	Disables print status messages
-x	Installs a Solaris label or an MS-DOS file system; it does not format the PCMCIA memory card
-b <i>label</i>	Specifies a UNIX or MS-DOS label on a PCMCIA memory card
-t dos	Installs an MS-DOS file system (UNIX file system is the default)
-B <i>filename</i>	Installs a special boot loader

Note – There is no option in the `fdformat` utility for installing a NEC-DOS file system on a PCMCIA memory card.

If you want to format a PCMCIA memory card, you must specify a device name for the PCMCIA memory card. Otherwise, the `fdformat` utility automatically specifies the diskette drive as the default device.

The format for a device name of a PCMCIA memory card is

```
/dev/rdisk/cntndnsn
```

or

```
/dev/dsk/cntndnsn.
```

For example, the device name `/dev/dsk/c1t6d0s2` represents a PCMCIA SRAM memory card with a logical socket controller number 1, a technology number 6, and a slice number 2

Table G-2 list the available device name options for the `fdformat` utility.

Table G-2 `fdformat` Utility Device Name Options

Device Name Option	Description
<i>n</i>	Represents a decimal number
<i>cn</i>	Represents controller <i>n</i>
<i>tn</i>	Represents technology region <i>n</i> 0x1 ROM, 0x2 OTPROM, 0x3 EPROM, 0x4 EEPROM, 0x5 FLASH, 0x6 SRAM, 0x7 DRAM
<i>dn</i>	Represents technology region in type <i>n</i>
<i>sn</i>	Represents slice <i>n</i> (This release supports only one partition on the PCMCIA memory card. Therefore, the partition number <i>sn</i> for the device name must be <i>s2</i> .)

▼ Displaying File Names with the `tar` Command

You may want to display the file names that are resident on a PCMCIA memory card.

◆ Type:

```
% tar tvf device_name
```

Table G-3 tar Command Options to Display Filenames

Option	Description
t	lists or displays files that are resident on the PCMCIA memory card
v	specifies a verbose listing
f	specifies an input device name

Copying Files

To copy a file or directory from a PCMCIA memory card to a hard disk or from a hard disk to a PCMCIA memory card, you must have already formatted the PCMCIA memory card (see “Formatting a PCMCIA Memory Card” on page 227). In addition, you must have write permission for the destination directory on the hard disk.

If you use the following procedure to copy a file or directory, you preserve the owner, permissions, group, and modification time of the file or directory.

Note – If you use the `tar` command to copy files to a PCMCIA memory card, you must use the `tar` command to extract or copy files from the PCMCIA memory card.

▼ Copying Files from a Hard Disk to a PCMCIA Memory Card

1. Type:

```
% cd directory
```

where *directory* is the name of the directory in which the files that you want to copy are located.

For example, to copy the file `/home/samples/design`, type:

```
% cd /home/samples
```

2. Type:

```
% tar cvf device_name filename
```

Table G-4 tar Command Options to Copy Files to a PCMCIA Memory Card

Option	Description
c	creates a backup archive
v	displays a verbose listing
f	specifies an input device name

For example, to copy the file `./design` located on your hard disk to a PCMCIA memory card that has the device name `/dev/rdisk/c1t6d0s2`, type:

```
% tar cvf /dev/rdisk/c1t6d0s2 ./design
```

▼ Copying Files from a PCMCIA Memory Card to a Hard Disk

1. Type:

```
% cd directory
```

where *directory* is the name of the directory in which the files that you want to copy are located. In this case, the directory is located on the PCMCIA memory card.

For example, to copy the file `/home/samples/design`, type:

```
% cd /home/samples
```

2. Type:

```
% tar xvf device_name filename
```

Table G-5 tar Command Options to Copy Files from a PCMCIA Memory Card

Option	Description
x	extracts a backup archive
v	displays a verbose listing
f	specifies an input device name
p	preserves the original modes of the file



Caution – If a file or directory with the same name as the one being copied already exists in the working directory, it is automatically overwritten.

For example, to copy the file `./design` from a PCMCIA memory card with an address `/dev/rdisk/c1t6d0s2` to the working directory on your hard disk, type:

```
% tar xvpf /dev/rdisk/c1t6d0s2 ./design
```

Copying Files with Volume Management Enabled

This is the second of three sections that describe different methods for formatting a PCMCIA memory card and to copy files between it and a hard disk. This section describes the way to do such tasks when Volume Management is enabled on your system.

Note – The PCMCIA memory card is automatically managed by Volume Management. You do not have to become superuser to copy files from your system to the PCMCIA memory card.



Caution – After just having removed a PCMCIA memory card from a socket, you should wait for a minimum of two to three seconds before attempting to insert it into another socket. Otherwise, Volume Management may not be able to mount the PCMCIA memory card properly. Should Volume Management be unable to mount the PCMCIA memory card properly, restart the `vold` daemon or reboot your system, if necessary.

Also, if you insert a PCMCIA memory card into a socket and then immediately remove it, Volume Management might no longer recognize that socket. You can solve this problem in the same way—restart the `vold` daemon or reboot your system, if necessary.

Familiarize yourself with the following:

- The Volume Manager supports *only one* PCMCIA memory card.
- The `volcheck(1)` command supports PCMCIA memory cards.
- The PCMCIA hardware uses a manual mechanism. The `eject(1)` command allows you to manually eject PCMCIA memory cards so that the Volume Manager can unmount the file system.
- `filemgr(1)` does not provide a File Manager pop-up menu when a PCMCIA memory card is inserted. However, the File Manager can display names of directories and manipulate files in the `/pcmem/pcmemn` directory (where *n* represents the PCMCIA socket number).

This section describes the following tasks:

- Formatting an unlabeled PCMCIA memory card
- Reformatting a PCMCIA memory card
- Mounting a PCMCIA memory card
- Copying files
- Ejecting a PCMCIA memory card

▼ Formatting an Unlabeled PCMCIA Memory Card

- If you have already formatted your PCMCIA memory card, skip this section.
- If you want to reformat an already formatted PCMCIA memory card, go to “Reformatting a PCMCIA Memory Card” on page 235.

Note – The `format` utility cannot be used with PCMCIA memory cards. Only the `fdformat` utility will work.

1. Insert the PCMCIA memory card into a PCMCIA socket.
2. Enter a command to format the memory card with the desired file system (UNIX or MS-DOS).

To format a memory card with an UNIX file system, type the following commands:

```
% fdformat vol_alias_device_name
% newfs /vol/dev/aliases/vol_alias_device_name
```

For example, to format a PCMCIA memory card in PCMCIA socket number 0 with a UNIX file system, type the following commands

```
% fdformat pcmem0
% newfs /vol/dev/aliases/pcmem0
```

Or, to format a memory card with an MS-DOS file system, type one of the following commands:

```
% fdformat -t dos vol_alias_device_name
```

or

```
% fdformat -d vol_alias_device_name
```

For example, to format a PCMCIA memory card in PCMCIA socket number 0 with an MS-DOS file system, type either of the following commands

```
% fdformat -d pcmem0
```

or

```
% fdformat -t dos pcmem0
```

3. Remove and insert the PCMCIA memory card.

This step is necessary so that the Volume Manager can remount the mounting directory `/pcmem/pcmem0`.

Or you can perform the following steps without removing the PCMCIA memory card. Type:

```
% eject pcmem0  
% volcheck
```

The Volume Manager automatically remounts the PCMCIA memory card.

▼ Reformatting a PCMCIA Memory Card

If you have already formatted your PCMCIA memory card, skip this section.

1. Insert the PCMCIA memory card in the PCMCIA socket.

2. Enter a command to reformat the memory card with the desired file system (UNIX or MS-DOS).

To reformat a memory card with an UNIX file system, type the following commands:

```
% fdformat -U vol_alias_device_name
% newfs /vol/dev/aliases/vol_alias_device_name
```

For example, to format a PCMCIA memory card in PCMCIA socket number 1 with a UNIX file system, type the following commands

```
% fdformat pcmem1
% newfs /vol/dev/aliases/pcmem1
```

Or, to reformat a memory card with an MS-DOS file system, type one of the following commands:

```
% fdformat -U -t dos vol_alias_device_name
```

or

```
% fdformat -Ud vol_alias_device_name
```

For example, to reformat a PCMCIA memory card in PCMCIA socket number 1 with an MS-DOS file system, type either of the following commands

```
% fdformat -d pcmem1
```

or

```
% fdformat -t dos pcmem1
```


3. Remove and insert the PCMCIA memory card.

This step is necessary so that the Volume Manager can remount the mounting directory `/pcmem/pcmem0`.

Or you can perform the following steps without removing the PCMCIA memory card. Type:

```
% eject pcmem0
% volcheck
```

The Volume Manager automatically remounts the PCMCIA memory card.

The following table is a summary of options for the `fdformat` utility.

Table G-6 `fdformat` Utility Options

Option	Description
-U	Unmounts the PCMCIA memory card
-d	Installs an MS-DOS file system (UNIX is the default)
-t dos	Installs an MS-DOS file system (UNIX is the default)

Copying Files

You can use commands such as `cp`, `rm`, `diff`, and `ls` to copy, remove, compare, and list the directory names for files on a PCMCIA memory card.

▼ Copying Files from a Hard Disk to a PCMCIA Memory Card

◆ Type:

```
example% cp filename /pcmem/pcmem0/filename
```

▼ Copying Files from a PCMCIA Memory Card to a Hard Disk

◆ Type:

```
example% cp /pcmem/pcmem0/filename /pathname/filename
```

▼ Ejecting a PCMCIA Memory Card Using the `eject(1)` Command

If you want to remove a PCMCIA memory cards while a file system is mounted, you *must* use the `eject(1)` command.



Warning - Removing a PCMCIA memory card while mounted results in a system panic.

1. Type:

```
% eject vol_alias_device_name
```

or type:

```
% eject pcmem0
```

A Removable Media Manager pop-up is displayed.

2. Click on the OK button.

3. Remove the PCMCIA memory card.

Note - If you want to continue using the PCMCIA memory card, leave it in the PCMCIA socket. Use the `volcheck(1)` command so Volume Manager can remount the PCMCIA memory card. To run this command, type `volcheck`.

Copying Files with Volume Management Disabled

This is the third of three sections that describe different methods for formatting a PCMCIA memory card and for copying files between it and a hard disk. This section describes the way to do such tasks when Volume Management is disabled on your system.

This section describes the following tasks:

- Disabling Volume Management
- Formatting a PCMCIA Memory Card
- Mounting a PCMCIA Memory Card
- Copying files
- Enabling Volume Management

▼ Disabling Volume Management

1. **Choose Programs** ► **Command Tools** from your **Workspace** menu.

2. **Become superuser by typing:**

```
example% su
Password: root_password
example#
```

3. **Disable Volume Management by typing:**

```
# /etc/init.d/volmgt stop
```

▼ Formatting a PCMCIA Memory Card

If you have already formatted your PCMCIA memory card, skip this section.

1. **Insert the PCMCIA memory card in the PCMCIA socket.**
2. **Enter a command to format the memory card with the desired file system (UNIX or MS-DOS).**

Note – The `format` utility cannot be used with PCMCIA memory cards. Only the `fdformat` utility will work.

To format a memory card with a UNIX file system, type the following commands:

```
% fdformat device_name
% newfs device_name
```

For example, to format a PCMCIA memory card in a disk drive with an assigned device name of `/dev/dsk/c1t6d0s2`, type:

```
% fdformat /dev/dsk/c1t6d0s2
% newfs /dev/dsk/c1t6d0s2
```

To format a memory card with an MS-DOS file system, type one of the following commands:

```
% fdformat -d device_name
```

or

```
% fdformat -t dos device_name
```

For example, to format a PCMCIA memory card in a disk drive with an assigned device name of `/dev/dsk/c1t6d0s2`, type:

```
% fdformat -d /dev/dsk/c1t6d0s2
```

or

```
% fdformat -t dos /dev/dsk/c1t6d0s2
```



Warning – Removing a PCMCIA memory card while mounted results in a system panic.

▼ Mounting a PCMCIA Memory Card

◆ **Mount a PCMCIA memory card with a UNIX file system by typing:**

```
# mount mount_directory device_name
```

If there is no /mnt directory, type:

```
example# mkdir /mnt
```

For example, to mount a UNIX file system in the /mnt directory on a disk drive with an assigned address of c1t6d0s2, type:

```
example# mount /dev/dsk/c1t6d0s2 /mnt
```

◆ **Mount a PCMCIA memory card with a MS-DOS file system by typing:**

```
# mount -F pcfs mount_directory device_name
```

If there is no /pcfs directory, type:

```
example# mkdir /pcfs
```

For example, to mount an MS-DOS file system in the /pcfs directory on a disk drive with an assigned address of c1t6d0s2, type:

```
example# mount -F pcfs /dev/dsk/c1t6d0s2 /pcfs
```

Copying Files

You can use commands such as `cp`, `rm`, `diff`, and `ls`, to copy, remove, compare, and list the directory names of files on a PCMCIA memory card.

▼ Copying Files from a Hard Disk to a PCMCIA Memory Card

◆ Type:

```
example# cp filename /pcfs/filename
```

▼ From a PCMCIA Memory Card to a Hard Disk

◆ Type:

```
example# cp /pcfs/filename /pathname/filename
```

If you accidentally remove the PCMCIA memory card while mounted, unmount the mount directory.

◆ Insert the memory card to the PCMCIA socket to unmount the mount directory by typing:

```
# umount mount_directory
```

For example:

```
example# umount /pcfs
```

▼ Enabling Volume Management

◆ Enable Volume Management by typing:

```
# /etc/init.d/volmgt start
```

Using a PCMCIA Serial/Modem Card

Refer to the product manual provided with your PCMCIA modem or serial interface card for information about operation of that device.

PCMCIA Serial/Modem Card Device Names

The device names for the PCMCIA serial devices are created in the `/dev/term` and `/dev/cua` directories.

The device names are `pcN`

where *N* is a PCMCIA socket number.

Eight entries are created in the `/etc/remote` directory that correspond to the first eight PCMCIA sockets.

PCMCIA Serial/Modem Cards and Power Management's Resume/Suspend Feature

This section provides additional information for systems that have PCMCIA cards and the Power Management software installed. For more information on Power Management, refer to the *Power Management Guide*.



Caution – Do not insert or remove a PCMCIA card while your system is suspending or resuming. The PCMCIA card will not be recognized after the resume operation.

If an application is accessing a PCMCIA serial/modem card while the system is being suspended, a HANGUP condition may occur which may cause the application to terminate.

For example, if you used the `tip` command to access a PCMCIA serial/modem card while trying to suspend your system, the `tip` command automatically exits when your system resumes. Other applications, such as UUCP or PPP, may try to automatically access the PCMCIA serial or modem card.

Index

Symbols

- , command option designator, 21
- ! , *See* exclamation point (!)
- # , *See* pound sign (#)
- \$, *See* dollar sign (\$)
- % , *See* percent sign (%)
- & , *See* ampersand (&)
- * , *See* asterisk (*)
- + , mailx folder designator, 112
- .. , *See* dot (.)
- ... , parent directory, 35 to 36, 46
- / , *See* forward slash (/)
- :, *See* colon (:)
- ;; , *See* semicolon (;)
- > , redirect symbol, 21
- ? , *See* question mark (?)
- @ , *See* at sign (@)
- \ , *See* backslash (\)
- \< , vi search command, 89
- \> , vi search command, 89
- ^ , *See* carat (^)
- | , pipe symbol, 22
- ~ , *See* tilde (~); tilde commands (mailx)

Numerics

- 9 option (kill command), 67

A

- A command (vi), 78
- a command (vi), 78
- a option
 - lpstat command, 132
 - ls command, 46
- aborting, *See* canceling; undoing
- absolute permissions, 50 to 53
 - See also* permissions
- accelerators, *See* keyboard equivalents
- access control mechanisms, 202 to 203
 - See also* permissions ; security
- accounts
 - defined, 1
 - managing user accounts, 217
- adding
 - fax modem, 223
 - groups, 217
 - hosts, 217, 220
 - printers, 217, 221
 - RS-232 interface, 223
 - serial port services, 217, 222
 - software, 217
 - user accounts, 217

ADJUST mouse button, xvii

adjusting nominal profile, 159

Administration Tool, *See* `admintool`

`admintool`, 217 to 222

- Groups, 217
- Hosts, 217, 220
- overview, 184, 217 to 218
- Printers, 217, 222
- Serial Ports, 217, 222
- Software, 217
- Users, 217
- using, 218 to 219

Again operation, keyboard equivalent, 4

aging passwords, 65

alias environment variable, 150

aliases (C shell), 150

aliases (mail), 115 to 120

- case sensitivity, 118
- defined, 115
- `.mailrc` file compared to
 - `/etc/aliases` file, 120
- private, 115
- public, 117
- sending letters to
 - `/etc/aliases` aliases, 119 to 120
 - `.mailrc` aliases, 116 to 117
- setting up
 - in `.mailrc` file, 115 to 117
 - in `/etc/aliases` file, 117 to 120

aliases file, *See* `/etc/aliases` file

ambient light, and monitors, 162

ampersand (&)

- background symbol, 23
- escaping, 61
- `mailx` prompt, 101
- metacharacter, 58
- searching for, 60
- system prompt returned to window
 - by, 156, 157

antiglare treatment, 162

appending text (`vi`), 78

applications, unexpected termination

- of, 243

`apropos` command, 25

arrow keys, moving with (`vi`), 76

asterisk (*)

- `grep` command operator, 59 to 60, 61
- `mailx` saved-letter designator, 111
- metacharacter, 58
- searching for, 60
- wildcard character
 - changing permissions with, 49, 52
 - copying files with, 29
 - deleting files with, 31
 - `grep` command, 59 to 60
 - `vi` search command, 89

at sign (@)

- in e-mail addresses, 98
- in passwords, 64

`-auth` option (`openwin` command), 204

authorization protocols, 203 to 205

- MIT-MAGIC-COOKIE-1
 - authorization protocol, 203, 204 to 206, 207
- SUN-DES-1 authorization
 - protocol, 204 to 205, 206, 208

Automated Security Enhancement Tool (ASET), 187

autowrap, command entry and, 19

B

`~b` command (`mailx`), 121

`B` command (`vi`), 76

`b` command (`vi`), 76

- `-B` option (`fdformat` utility), 228
- `-b` option (`fdformat` utility), 228

“back” command (`vi`), 76

Back Space key, `vi` and, 76

background, running commands in, 23

backslash (\)

- `\<` and `\>` `vi` search commands, 89
- command continuation symbol, 19
- as escape character, 58, 61 to 62, 88
- escaping, 61, 88
- metacharacter, 58
- searching for, 60

backward searching (vi), 87
banner page suppression (lp), 127
base names, 42
Bcc: prompt (mailx), 108, 121
bdiff command, 41
beginning of file, deleting from (vi), 82
beginning of line
 inserting text at (vi), 79
 moving to (vi), 76
 searching for (vi), 88
beginning of word
 moving to (vi), 76
 searching for (vi), 89
/bin directory, 33
/bin/csh command, 146
 See also C shell
/bin/ksh command, 146
 See also Korn shell
/bin/sh command, 146
 See also Bourne shell
Black Level control, adjusting, 163
blind carbon copies (mailx), 108, 121
block operations, *See* copying; deleting;
 moving
Bootparams command, 187
bottom device modifier, 15
bottom of screen, moving to (vi), 77
Bourne shell
 command for, 146
 command prompt for, 148, 151
 as default shell, 2
 environment variables for, *See*
 .profile file
 help for, 2
 home directory specification, 35
 OpenWindows quick start up and, 9
 to 10
 user profile file for, *See* .profile file
breaking lines (vi), 80
Brightness control, adjusting, 163
buffer (vi), 73
 See also named buffers (vi)

C

~c command (mailx), 108, 121
c command (mailx), 111
C command (vi), 79
-c option
 lp command, 127
 lpstat command, 132
c option (tar command), 231
C shell
 command for, 146
 command prompt for, 148, 152
 environment variables for, *See*
 .cshrc file
 help for, 2
 home directory specification, 34 to 35
 OpenWindows quick start up and, 9,
 10
 repeating commands and, 20
 user profile files for, *See* .cshrc file;
 .login file
calibrated profile, 160
calibrating, color monitors, 159 to 173
calibration
 . *See also* monitors
 concepts, 159 to 161
 interrupting, 170
calibration puck, 159
 connecting, 165
 errors, 171 to 172
 use, 160
Calibrator Tool, 160
 allocation problem, 173
 error messages, 171 to 173
 quitting, 170
 running, 165 to 170
 starting, 166
“Calibrator Tool is not functioning
 properly” message, 172
campus area networks (CAN)
 See also networks
 defined, 135
cancel command, 132 to 133, 182
canceling

consulted search-and-replace, 90
 displaying, 25
 mailx letters
 if screen freezes during
 entry, 107
 unsent letters, 107, 121
 print requests, 132 to 133
 remote connection, 138
 CANs (campus area networks)
 See also networks
 defined, 135
 Caps Lock key, vi and, 72
 carat (^)
 beginning-of-line command (vi), 76,
 88
 grep command operator, 58, 61
 searching for, 60
 carbon copies (mailx), 108, 121
 case sensitivity
 aliases (/etc/aliases file), 118
 command names, 18
 searching files, 56
 vi
 command names, 72, 76
 searches, 87
 case, changing (vi), 95
 cat command, 31
 cc command (vi), 79
 Cc: prompt (mailx), 108, 121
 cd command, 34 to 36, 148
 CDPATH environment variable, 148
 changing
 See also swapping
 access to server, 205 to 208
 authorization protocol, 204
 case (vi), 95
 command prompt, 151 to 152
 directories, 34 to 36, 148
 groups, 217
 hosts, 217
 keyboard, 189 to 198
 passwords, 64 to 65
 permissions, 47 to 53, 153 to 154
 printer setup, 217, 221
 serial port services, 217, 222
 text
 from command line, 18
 e-mail (unsent), 99
 from vi, 71, 79 to 81
 user accounts, 217
 vi mode, 71
 viewing environment, 161 to 163
 working directory, 34 to 36
 .xinitrc file, 8, 178 to 179
 character strings, defined, 87
 characterization data, 159
 characters
 deleting (vi), 81
 moving left or right one character
 (vi), 76
 replacing (vi), 80
 substituting (vi), 80
 transposing (vi), 80
 chmod command
 absolute permissions, 50 to 53
 relative permissions, 47 to 49
 umask command vs., 153 to 154
 clearing screen (vi), 72
 client authority file, 206 to 207
 client_program program, 209
 :co command (ex), 85 to 86
 colon (:)
 in mail alias names, 117
 vi commands beginning with, 72
 color
 maintaining accuracy, 159
 shifting, on monitors, 160
 color monitors
 . *See also* monitors
 file describing, 161
 shifting of color on, 160
 command history, 20, 148, 153
 command mode (vi), 72
 command prompt
 changing, 151 to 152
 default, 17, 148
 described, 17
 environment variable for

- defining, 148
- Command Tool
 - entering commands using, 17, 19
 - remote machines, 200 to 201
- commands, 17 to 25
 - See also* tilde commands (mailx)
 - aliases (C shell only), 150
 - background running of, 23
 - case sensitivity, 18
 - entering, 17, 18 to 23
 - correcting typing mistakes, 18
 - long commands, 19
 - multiple commands, 19
 - options, 21
 - overview, 18
 - remote entry, 142 to 143
 - repeating previous
 - commands, 20 to 21
 - repeating vi commands, 84
 - as executable files, 27
 - executing remotely, 142 to 143
 - help for, 2, 24 to 25
 - keyword lookup, 25
 - long, 19
 - multiple, 19
 - options, 21
 - PATH environment variable and, 148, 149 to 150
 - piping output, 22
 - redirecting output, 21 to 22
 - remote execution, 142 to 143
 - repeating, 20 to 21
 - repeating vi, 84
 - status of, 66
 - syntax, 24
- commenting out
 - /etc/aliases file lines, 119
 - OPENWINHOME environment variable, 6 to 7
- comparing, files, 39 to 41
- Compose Key, disabling/enabling, 189 to 190
- concatenating files, 31
- connecting, calibration puck, 165
 - (continue): message (mailx), 114
- Contrast control, adjusting, 163
- Control key remapping (x86 only), 194 to 198
- convert_to_Xdefaults program, 176
- copy and paste, *See* copying
- Copy operation, keyboard equivalent, 4
- copying
 - from clipboard, keyboard equivalent, 5
 - to clipboard, keyboard equivalent, 4
 - directories, 37 to 38
 - directories remotely, 141
 - files, 29 to 30
 - before printing, 127
 - remotely, 141 to 142
 - keyboard equivalent for, 4
 - lines
 - in ex, 85 to 86
 - between files (vi), 92
 - in vi, 82 to 83
 - mail
 - to a file, 110 to 111
 - to a folder, 111 to 113
 - previous commands, 20 to 21
- correcting typing mistakes
 - See also* changing, text command line, 18
 - e-mail (unsent), 99
 - vi, 71
- “Could not initialize calibration data structure” message, 171
- “Could not initialize visual data structure” message, 171
- “Could not load the profile” message, 171
- “Could not update profiles for this device” message, 171
- counts, for repeating commands (vi), 84
- cp command, 29 to 30, 37 to 38
- cpio command, 225
- cpu time, 66
- crash recovery (vi), 93
- creating

directories, 36

files

- touch command, 29
- vi command for, 70

csh command, 146

See also C shell

.cshrc file

- described, 146
- environment variables in, 147 to 153
 - alias, 150
 - commonly used, 147 to 149
 - OPENWINHOME, 6 to 7, 176, 177
 - PATH, 149 to 150
 - set history command, 152
 - set noclobber command (overwrite protection), 152
 - set prompt command (command prompt), 152
 - umask (file permissions), 153 to 154
- listing, 46
- location of, 146
- OpenWindows quick start up and, 9, 10

Ctrl characters, in passwords, 64

Ctrl-B command (vi), 78

Ctrl-C command (command line), 25

Ctrl-C command (mailx), 107, 121

Ctrl-D command

- mailx, 99, 121
- vi, 78

Ctrl-F command (vi), 78

Ctrl-L command (vi), 72

Ctrl-U command (vi), 78

~Ctrl-Z command, suspending remote connection, 139

~~Ctrl-Z command, suspending remote connection, 140

cursor, *See* moving around in files (vi)

customizing, 145 to 158

- environment variables, 147 to 153
- file permissions, 153 to 154
- fonts (OpenWindows), 155 to 158
- initialization files, 145 to 146
- overview, 145

cut and paste, *See* moving

Cut operation, keyboard equivalent, 4

cw command (vi), 79

D

:d command (ex), 87

~d command (mailx), 121

d command (mailx), 103 to 104

D command (vi), 82

-d option

- lp command, 124 to 125, 127
- lpstat command, 132
- passwd command, 65

-d option (fdformat utility), 228, 237

d0 command (vi), 82

d1G command (vi), 82

dash (-)

- command option designator, 21
- file type indicator, 45

data, protecting on PCMCIA cards, 225 to 226

date command, 18, 19

dd command (vi), 82, 83

dead.letter file, 107, 121

DECnet internetworking (DNI), 211 to 215

- displaying remote clients on
 - OpenWindows machines, 213
 - displaying remote clients on VAX, 213 to 215
- overview, 212
- setting up, 212

DECwindows, internetworking with OpenWindows, *See* DECnet internetworking (DNI)

default ring on menus, xviii

defaults

- authorization protocol, 204
- command prompt, 17, 148
- directory, 28

- file permissions, 153 to 154
- fonts, 155
- mouse button functions, xvii, xviii
- permissions, 48
- printer, 148
- shell, 2, 146
- vi mode, 71
- .defaults file (SunView), converting to
 - .Xdefaults file
 - (OpenWindows), 175 to 176
- deleting
 - command line, 18
 - directories, 38
 - files, 30 to 31
 - temporary work files, 44
 - groups, 217
 - hosts, 217
 - mail, 103 to 104
 - OPENWINHOME environment
 - variable, 6 to 7, 176 to 177
 - printers, 217, 221
 - serial port services, 217, 222
 - software, 217
 - text
 - ex command, 87
 - vi commands, 81 to 82
 - typing mistakes, 18
 - user accounts, 217
 - .xinitrc file, 8, 178
- dev option (openwin command), 13 to 16
- /dev/cua directory, 243
- /dev/term directory, 243
- devconfig program, x86-based
 - machines, 5
- device handler error message, 172
- device names, for PCMCIA serial/modem
 - cards, 243
- devices, 28, 183, 184
 - /devices directory, 183
- df command, 68
- dG command (vi), 82
- diff command, 39 to 40
- diff3 command, 41
- directories, 32 to 38
 - See also specific directories*
 - changing, 34 to 36, 148
 - changing permissions, 47 to 53, 153 to 154
 - copying, 37 to 38
 - copying remotely, 141
 - creating, 36
 - current directory (.), 46
 - default, 28
 - defined, 28
 - deleting, 38
 - determining current location, 33 to 34
 - displaying directory disk usage, 68
 - displaying permissions, 45 to 46
 - displaying remotely, 142
 - displaying status, 45 to 46
 - environment variables for, 148, 149 to 150
 - as files, 28
 - folder, 111 to 112
 - hierarchy of, 32 to 33
 - home directory
 - changing to, 28, 34 to 35
 - defined, 28
 - defining, 148
 - directory hierarchy and, 33
 - remote login and, 137, 200
 - listing, 68
 - moving, 37
 - overview, 27
 - parent directory (..), 35 to 36, 46
 - path names, 32, 33, 36 to 37
 - environment variables for, 148, 149 to 150
 - permissions, 44 to 53
 - absolute, 50 to 53
 - changing, 47 to 53, 153 to 154
 - default setting, 153 to 154
 - defaults described, 48
 - described, 44
 - displaying, 45 to 46
 - printing working, 33 to 34
 - renaming, 37
 - root directory (/), 32, 33
 - searching, *See* searching, files and

- directories
 - status, displaying, 45 to 46
 - structure, changes in, 183
 - subdirectories, 32 to 33
 - working, 33 to 36
- disabling
 - Compose Key, 189 to 190
 - serial port services, 217, 222
 - Volume Management, 239
- disk storage, managing, 68
- diskettes, vs. PCMCIA cards, 223
- disks, naming conventions, 183
- DISPLAY environment variable, 200, 208 to 209, 213
- displaying
 - See also* listing
 - Command Tool window, 17
 - directories remotely, 142
 - directory disk usage, 68
 - directory permissions, 45 to 46
 - directory status, 45 to 46
 - disk usage, 68
 - environment variables, 147
 - file contents, 31
 - file permissions, 45 to 46
 - file status, 45 to 46
 - file type, 32
 - history list, 20
 - interrupting, 25
 - mail headers, 102 to 103
 - manual pages, 24
 - menus, xviii
 - network user information, 143 to 144
 - PCMCIA card files, 229 to 230
 - permissions, 45 to 46
 - printer status, 128 to 132
 - property window, keyboard equivalent, 5
 - remote login location, 140
 - remote user information, 143 to 144
 - Shell Tool window, 17
 - users on your file server, 105
 - vi parameters, 93
- displays, multiple, OpenWindows start up and, 13 to 16, 177
- ditroff program, 69
- DNI, *See* DECnet internetworking (DNI)
- DNI_X_ENABLE environment variable, 212, 215
- dnilogin command, 213
- documents, defined, 27
- dollar sign (\$)
 - command prompt, 17, 148
 - end-of-file designator (ex), 86
 - end-of-line command (vi), 76, 88
 - escaping, 61 to 62
 - grep command operator, 59, 61
 - metacharacter, 58
- dot (.)
 - ~. command (mailx), 121
 - current directory, 46
 - current line designator (ex), 86
 - escaping, 61
 - file prefix, 46
 - grep command operator, 59, 61
 - listing hidden (dot) files, 46
 - metacharacter, 58
 - search wildcard character (vi), 89
 - searching for, 60
- dot files, 46
 - See also specific files*
- dot-dot (..), parent directory, 35 to 36, 46
- double quotes
 - grep command and, 57, 61 to 62
 - named buffers and (vi), 83
- down one line, moving (vi), 76
- drivers, loaded by kernel, 184
- du command, 68
- dumb terminals, 149
- dump/restore command, 225
- duplicating, *See* copying
- dw command (vi), 81

E

- e command (vi), 76
- echo, passwords and, 2, 64

editing, *See* changing
 editor, *See* vi editor
 eject command, 238
 electronic mail, *See* mail
 e-mail, *See* mail
 enabling
 Compose Key, 189 to 190
 serial port services, 217
 “end” command (vi), 76
 end of file
 copying to in ex, 86
 deleting to (vi), 82
 marking in mailx, 99, 121
 end of line
 appending text to (vi), 78
 moving to (vi), 76
 searching for (vi), 88
 end of word, moving to (vi), 76
 ending, *See* quitting
 entering commands, *See* commands,
 entering
 entry mode (vi), 71 to 72
 env command, 147
 environment variables, 147 to 153
 alias (C shell only), 150
 CDPATH, 148
 defined, 145, 147
 DISPLAY, 200, 208 to 209, 213
 displaying, 147
 DNI_X_ENABLE, 212, 215
 HISTORY, 148, 153
 HOME, 148, 200
 LANG, 148
 LD_LIBRARY_PATH, 200
 LOGNAME, 148
 LPDEST, 148
 MAIL, 148
 MANSECTS, 148
 networked applications and, 200
 noclobber (C shell only), 152
 OPENWINHOME, 6 to 7, 176 to 177
 PATH, 148, 149 to 150
 PS1, 148, 151 to 152
 SHELL, 148
 TERM, 149
 TERMINFO, 149
 TZ, 149
 umask, 153 to 154
 user profile, 147 to 153
 erasing, *See* deleting
 error messages
 “Sorry”, 64, 65
 “Stranger: unknown host”, 138
 “Calibrator Tool is not functioning
 properly”, 172
 “Could not initialize calibration data
 structure”, 171
 “Could not initialize visual data
 structure”, 171
 “Could not load the profile”, 171
 “Could not update profiles for this
 device”, 171
 “Module was unable to perform
 successful luminance data
 measurement”, 172
 “No write since last change”, 74
 “Not enough swap memory to
 continue”, 171
 “Unable to configure profile files in
 /etc/openwin”, 171
 “Unable to create visual
 profiles”, 171
 “Unable to get a response from the
 puck”, 172
 “Unable to get the puck integration
 time”, 172
 “Unable to get the puck refresh fields
 value”, 172
 “Unable to get the puck sensitivity
 value”, 172
 “Unable to read the puck version
 number”, 172
 “Unable to set the puck averaging
 value”, 172
 “Unable to set the puck sensitivity
 value”, 172
 Esc key, vi command mode, 71, 72
 escape character (\), 58, 61 to 62, 88
 escaping escape character, 61, 88

escaping to shell command (mailx), 121
 /etc/aliases file, 117 to 120
 .mailrc file compared to, 120
 sending mail to, 119 to 120
 setting up aliases in, 117 to 120
 /etc/fstab directory, 183
 /etc/fstab file, 182
 /etc/group file, 217
 /etc/hosts file, 217, 220
 /etc/hosts.equiv file, 136, 141, 143
 /etc/lp directory, 183, 217
 /etc/openwin/devdata/profiles directory, 161
 /etc/passwd file, 136, 141, 143, 217
 /etc/printcap directory, 183
 /etc/profile file, 146
 /etc/remote directory, 243
 /etc/termcap directory, 183
 /etc/ttytab file, 184
 /etc/vfstab file, 182, 183
 ex commands, 72, 84 to 87
 case sensitivity on/off (:set ic, :set noic), 87
 copying lines (:co), 85 to 86
 deleting lines (:d), 87
 described, 72, 84
 inserting files (:r), 91
 line numbering (:set nu, :set nonu), 84 to 85
 moving lines (:m), 86
 opening files (:n), 91
 parameter setting (:set all), 93
 quitting
 and saving (:wq), 74
 without saving (:q, :q!), 74
 saving changes
 and quitting (:wq), 74
 without quitting (:w), 73
 searching and replacing (:g), 89 to 90
 undoing (:u), 95
 exclamation point (!)
 ~! command (mailx), 121
 command repetition operator, 20 to 21
 escaping, 61
 metacharacter, 58
 not operator, 43
 searching for, 60
 -exec option (find command), 43
 executable files, defined, 27
 execute permission
 absolute, 50, 51 to 53
 relative, 44, 47, 48 to 49
 executing commands remotely, 142 to 143
 Exit command (OpenWindows), 11
 exit command (SunOS), 3
 exiting, *See* quitting
 eye stress, reducing, 161
 See also calibrating

F

~f command (mailx), 121
 -f option
 lpstat command, 132
 mailx program, 113
 -f option (fdformat utility), 228
 f option (tar command), 231, 232
 fastboot command, 184
 fasthalt command, 184
 fax modem, 223
 fg command, reactivating remote connection, 140
 file command, 32
 File Manager (OpenWindows), 27
 file system
 changes in, 183
 hierarchy of, 33
 file systems, managing disk storage for, 68
 files, 27 to 32, 39 to 53
 See also directories; *specific files*
 changing permissions, 47 to 53, 153 to 154
 comparing, 39 to 41
 concatenating, 31
 copying, 29 to 30

- before printing, 127
- remotely, 141 to 142
- copying lines between, 92
- copying mail to, 110 to 111
- copying to PCMCIA cards, 237
- creating
 - with `touch` command, 29
 - with `vi`, 70
- defined, 27 to 28
- deleting, 30 to 31
 - temporary work files, 44
- displaying contents, 31
- displaying permissions, 45 to 46
- displaying status, 45 to 46
- displaying type, 32
- dot, 46
- editing, *See* `vi` editor
- executable, 27
- hidden, listing, 46
- initialization, 145 to 146
 - See also* `.cshrc` file; `.login` file; `.profile` file
- inserting into mail, 109, 121
- inserting into other files, 91
- large, comparing, 41
- length of, displaying, 45
- listing, 29, 45 to 46
- listing hidden, 46
- loading new, keyboard equivalent, 4
- moving, 30
- naming
 - base name, 42
 - renaming, 30
 - uniqueness requirements, 33
- opening
 - with `ex`, 91
 - keyboard equivalent, 4
 - with `vi`, 70
- OpenWindows start-up file, 7 to 8
- overview, 27 to 28
- overwrite prevention (C shell only), 152
- path names, 32, 33, 36 to 37
- permissions, 44 to 53
 - absolute, 50 to 53
 - changing, 47 to 53, 153 to 154
 - default setting, 153 to 154
 - defaults described, 48
 - described, 44
 - displaying, 45 to 46
- printing, *See* printing
- reading mail saved in, 113
- renaming, 30
- saving mail in, 110 to 111
- saving, keyboard equivalent, 5
- searching for, 41 to 44
- searching, *See* searching, files and directories
- sending mail directly to, 113
- size of, displaying, 45
- status, displaying, 45 to 46
- temporary, deleting, 44
- wildcard characters and, 29, 31

- filtering, `grep` command and, 56 to 57, 67
- `find` command, 41 to 44
- Find operation, keyboard equivalent, 4
- finding, *See* searching
- `finger` command, 106
- `fkeys` file, 194 to 195
- `-fn` option, 156 to 157
- folders (`mailx`), 111 to 114
 - listing, 113
 - previous folder, 114
 - reading mail saved in, 113 to 114
 - saving and copying mail to, 111 to 113
 - sending mail directly to, 113
 - switching to/from mailbox to/from, 114
- fonts (OpenWindows)
 - customizing, 155 to 157
 - installing in DECwindows server, 213 to 215
 - listing available, 158
- foreign languages, environment variable for, 148
- formatting PCMCIA cards, 227 to 229, 233 to 237, 239 to 241
- forward slash (/)
 - root directory, 32
 - `vi` search command, 87

forwarding mail, 121
function key remapping (x86 only), 194 to 198

G

:g command (ex), 89 to 90
G command (vi), 90
gamma lookup table (LUT), 160
glare, on monitors, 162
going to specific place in files, *See* moving around in files
gray-scale monitors, OpenWindows start up and, 13
GrayScale visuals, 161
grayvis option (openwin command), 13
greater than sign (>), redirect symbol, 21
grep command, 55 to 62

- basic search, 55 to 56
- case sensitivity, 56
- escape character, 58, 61 to 62
- filter function, 56 to 57, 67
- metacharacters
 - as operators, 58 to 60
 - searching for, 60 to 61
- multi-word strings, 57 to 58
- not operation, 58
- regular expressions and, 58 to 60, 61
- single or double quotes, 57, 61 to 62

group file, 217
-group option (find command), 43
Group user category, 44
groups

- changing permissions for, 49
- managing, 217
- sending mail to, 115 to 120

H

h command

- mailx, 103
- vi, 76

~h command (mailx), 108, 121
h- command (mailx), 103

H command (vi), 77
-h option (lp command), 127
hard disks, copying files to PCMCIA cards, 237
headers

- mailx, *See* mailx program, headers printing, 127

help

- for commands, 2, 24 to 25
- keyboard equivalent for, 4
- mailx program, 102, 122

hidden files, listing, 46
“high” command (vi), 77
history command, 20, 148
HISTORY environment variable, 148, 153
\$home command, 35, 36
/home directory, 33
home directory

- changing to, 28, 34 to 35
- defined, 28
- defining, 148
- directory hierarchy and, 33
- remote login and, 137, 200

HOME environment variable, 148, 200
host-based access control, 203, 205 to 206
/hosts directory, 33
hosts file, 217, 220
hosts, managing, 217, 220
hosts.equiv file, 136, 141, 143
hyphen, *See* dash (-)

I

I command (vi), 79
i command (vi), 71 to 72, 78
icons, keyboard equivalents, 4
ID number, canceling print requests by, 133
idle state, 66
incomplete module measurement error messages, 172
init command, 184

initialization files, 145 to 146
See also .cshrc file; .login file;
.profile file

inserting files
mailx, 109, 121
vi, 91
letters (mailx), 109, 121
PCMCIA cards, 227
text (vi), 71 to 72, 78 to 79
repeatedly, 83 to 84
installation errors, for KCMS packages, 171
installation, Solaris 2.5, 183
internetworking OpenWindows and DECwindows, 211 to 215
displaying remote clients on OpenWindows machines, 213
displaying remote clients on VAX, 213 to 215
overview, 211
setting up DECnet internetworking, 212

internetworks
See also networks
defined, 136

interrupting
calibration, 170
displaying, 25

invalid profile error messages, 173

J

J command (vi), 80
j command (vi), 76
joining lines (vi), 80

K

k command (vi), 76
-k option (df command), 68
KCMS packages, incorrect installation, 171

See also Kodak Color Management System

kcms_calibrate program, 165
kdmconfig command, 187
/kernel directory, 183
kernel, drivers loaded by, 184
keyboard equivalents (accelerators) (OpenWindows), xvii, xviii, 4 to 5

keyboard modification, 189 to 198
Compose Key
disabling/enabling, 189 to 190
Control key remapping (x86 only), 194 to 198
left-handed key remapping (SPARC only), 190 to 192
undoing remapping
SPARC, 192 to 193
x86, 195 to 198

keyboard type, x86-based machines and, 5

keyword lookup, for command help, 25

kill command, 67

Kodak Color Management System (KCMS), purpose, 159

Korn shell

command for, 146
command prompt for, 148, 151
environment variables for, *See* .profile file

help for, 2

OpenWindows quick start up and, 9 to 10
user profile file for, *See* .profile file

ksh command, 146

See also Korn shell

L

L command (vi), 77

l command (vi), 76, 77

-l option

lpstat command, 130 to 131

- ls command, 45
- ps command, 66
- rlogin command, 137
- rusers command, 144
- LANG environment variable, 148
- LANs (local area networks)
 - See also networks
 - defined, 135
- large files, comparing, 41
- last-line mode (vi), 72
- LD_LIBRARY_PATH environment variable, 200
- left
 - deleting lines to left of cursor (vi), 82
 - deleting one character to left of cursor (vi), 81
 - inserting text to left of cursor (vi), 78
 - moving to (vi), 76
- left device modifier, 15
- left-handed keyboard remapping (SPARC only), 190 to 192
- left-handed mouse button remapping, 189
- lefty.data file, 190 to 192
- length of files
 - displaying, 45
- letters, See mail
- /lib directory, 33
- libcps library, older versions of, 202, 203
- libdni library, 212, 215
- line numbering (vi), 84 to 85
- line printer subsystem, See printing
- line wrap, command entry and, 19
- lines
 - appending text to end (vi), 78
 - breaking (vi), 80
 - changing (vi), 79
 - copying
 - ex command, 85 to 86
 - between files (vi), 92
 - vi commands, 82 to 83
 - deleting
 - ex command, 87
 - vi command, 82
 - erasing command line, 18
 - inserting text at beginning (vi), 79
 - joining (vi), 80
 - moving
 - ex command, 86
 - vi commands, 83
 - moving to beginning or end (vi), 76
 - moving down one line (vi), 76
 - moving to specific (vi), 90
 - opening (vi), 79
 - undoing changes (vi), 81
- listing
 - See also displaying
 - directories, 68
 - files, 29, 45 to 46
 - folders (mailx), 113
 - fonts available (OpenWindows), 158
 - hidden files, 46
 - mail, 102
 - mailx commands, 122
 - tilde commands (mailx), 122
- loading new files, keyboard equivalent, 4
- local area networks (LANs)
 - See also networks
 - defined, 135
- local language, 148
- logging in
 - basic procedure, 1 to 2
 - remotely, 136 to 140, 200 to 201
 - as someone else, 137
- logging out, 3, 11
- .login file
 - described, 146
 - environment variables in, 147 to 153
 - listing, 46
 - location of, 146
- login names
 - defined, 1
 - defining, 148
 - determining for other users, 105 to 106
- login shells, 2 to 3
 - See also Bourne shell; C shell; Korn

- shell
 - default shell, 2, 146
 - identifying your login shell, 146, 147
 - remote shell command, 142 to 143
 - user profile files for, 146
 - logname command, 19
 - LOGNAME environment variable, 148
 - logout command, 138
 - long commands, entering, 19
 - long files, comparing, 41
 - looking up, *See* searching
 - “low” command (vi), 77
 - lowercase, *See* case sensitivity
 - lp command, 75, 123 to 127, 182
 - options summary, 126 to 127
 - /lp directory, 217
 - LP print service, *See* printing
 - LPDEST environment variable, 148
 - lpq command, 182
 - lpr command, 182
 - lprm command, 182
 - lpstat command, 127 to 132, 182
 - options summary, 131 to 132
 - ls command, 29, 45 to 46
- M**
 - :m command (ex), 86
 - ~m command (mailx), 109, 121
 - M command (vi), 77
 - m option (lp command), 125, 127
 - m time option (find command), 43
 - magic cookie authorization protocol, *See*
 - MIT-MAGIC-COOKIE-1
 - authorization protocol
 - mail aliases, *See* aliases (mail)
 - MAIL environment variable, 148
 - Mail Tool (OpenWindows), 97, 115
 - mail, *See* mailx program
 - mailbox, 98, 148, 182
 - See also* mailx program
 - .mailrc file
 - alias setup in, 115 to 117
 - /etc/aliases file compared to, 120
 - set askcc variable, 108
 - set folder variable, 112
 - mailtool program, 182
 - mailx program, 97 to 122, 182
 - address lookup, 105 to 106
 - aliases, *See* aliases (mail)
 - basics, 97 to 102
 - blind carbon copies, 108, 121
 - canceling letters
 - if screen freezes during entry, 107
 - unsent letters, 107, 121
 - carbon copies, 108, 121
 - (continue): message, 114
 - copying letters
 - to a file, 110 to 111
 - to a folder, 111 to 113
 - correcting typing errors, 99
 - dead.letter file, 107, 121
 - deleting letters from mbox file
 - and saving elsewhere, 110 to 112
 - without saving, 103 to 104
 - folders, 111 to 114
 - listing, 113
 - previous folder, 114
 - reading mail saved in, 113 to 114
 - saving and copying mail to, 111 to 113
 - sending mail directly to, 113
 - switching to/from mailbox to/from, 114
 - forwarding letters, 121
 - headers
 - described, 102 to 103, 111
 - displaying, 102 to 103
 - prompts for, 99, 108, 121
 - help, 102, 122
 - inserting files into current letter, 109, 121
 - inserting saved letters into current letter, 109, 121
 - listing commands, 122
 - listing letters, 102

login name, 98
 mailbox, 98, 148
 maximum line length, 107
 mbox file, 98, 102
 multiple recipients
 carbon copies to, 108
 sending letters to, 106 to 107
 overview, 97
 printing letters, 105, 121
 quitting, 101 to 102, 104, 121
 reading letters
 basic procedure, 100 to 101, 102 to 103
 in files or folders, 113 to 114
 replying to letters, 110, 121
 saving letters
 current letter, 121
 in mbox file, 98, 102
 from mbox file to folder, 111 to 113
 from mbox file to other file, 110 to 111
 sending letters, 98 to 99, 105 to 110
 basic procedure, 98 to 99, 105 to 107
 blind carbon copies, 108, 121
 canceling unsent letters, 107
 carbon copies, 108, 121
 directly to a file or folder, 113
 to /etc/aliases aliases, 119 to 120
 group mailings, 115 to 120
 inserting files into current letter, 109, 121
 inserting saved letters into current letter, 109
 to .mailrc aliases, 116 to 117
 multiple recipients, 106 to 107
 undeliverable letters, 107
 starting, 98
 tilde commands, *See* tilde commands (mailx)
 To: prompt, 108, 121
 undeleting letters, 104
 undeliverable letters, 107
 version number, 100, 102
 vi usage with, 114
 man command, 24
 managing the system, *See* admintool
 MANSECTS environment variable, 148
 manual pages (man pages)
 described, 2
 displaying, 24
 setting available sections of, 148
 mbox file
 See also mailx program
 described, 98, 102
 memory cards, *See* PCMCIA cards
 MENU mouse button, xvii
 menus
 See also Programs Menu (Workspace Properties)
 default ring on, xviii
 displaying entire, xviii
 messages, *See* error messages
 Meta key, 4, 194
 metacharacters (grep command), 58 to 61
 “middle” command (vi), 77
 middle of screen, moving to (vi), 77
 migrating
 from pre-version 3.3 OpenWindows to version 3.3 or later, 176 to 180
 from Sunview to OpenWindows version 3.3 or later, 175 to 176
 MIT-MAGIC-COOKIE-1 authorization protocol
 allowing access when using, 207
 as default, 204, 206
 described, 203
 .Xauthority file and, 206
 mkdir command, 36
 modems, managing, 184, 217, 222
 modes (vi), 71 to 72
 module initialization error message, 172
 module measurement error messages, 172
 “Module was unable to perform successful luminance data

- measurement” message, 172
 - monitors
 - adjusting, 163 to 164
 - ambient light, 162
 - antiglare treatment, 162
 - calibration, 160
 - color, calibrating, 159 to 173
 - correct viewing distance, 163
 - excessive brightness problems, 164
 - OpenWindows start up and, 13 to 16, 177
 - profile information for, 167 to 168
 - reflection problem, 162
 - selecting for Calibrator Tool, 166 to 168
 - more command, 31
 - mouse buttons
 - default functions, xvii, xviii
 - remapping, 189
 - mouse type, x86-based machines and, 5
 - moving
 - directories, 37
 - files, 30
 - lines
 - ex command, 86
 - vi commands, 83
 - moving around in files (vi), 75 to 78
 - arrow keys and, 76
 - beginning of line, 76
 - beginning of word, 76
 - bottom of screen, 77
 - cursor illustrated, 70
 - down one line, 76
 - end of line, 76
 - end of word, 76
 - left one character, 76
 - left one word, 76
 - middle of screen, 77
 - overview, 75
 - paging, 77 to 78
 - right one character, 76, 77
 - right one word, 76
 - scrolling, 77 to 78
 - specific line, 90
 - top of screen, 77
 - multiple commands, entering, 19
 - multiple copies, printing, 126, 127
 - multiple mail recipients, 106 to 107, 108
 - multiple screens, OpenWindows start up and, 13 to 16, 177
 - multiple vi operations
 - multiple, simultaneous sessions, 73
 - multiple-file editing, 91 to 92
 - mv command, 30, 37
- ## N
- n option (lp command), 127
 - :n command (ex, 91
 - N command (vi), 87
 - n command (vi), 87
 - n option (lp command), 126
 - name option (find command), 42
 - name services, admintool and hosts and, 221
 - named buffers (vi), 83 to 84
 - naming
 - See also* case sensitivity
 - directories, renaming, 37
 - files
 - base name, 42
 - renaming, 30
 - uniqueness requirements, 33
 - passwords, 63 to 64, 65
 - navigating, *See* moving around in files
 - network name services, admintool and hosts and, 221
 - networks, 135 to 144
 - aborting remote connection, 138
 - copying files remotely, 141 to 142
 - defined, 135
 - displaying user information, 143 to 144
 - executing commands remotely, 142 to 143
 - internetworking OpenWindows and DECwindows, 211 to 215
 - displaying remote clients on OpenWindows

machines, 213
 displaying remote clients on
 VAX, 213 to 215
 overview, 211
 setting up DECnet
 internetworking, 212
 logging in remotely, 136 to 138
 basic procedure, 136
 without home directory, 137
 as someone else, 137
 to unknown machine, 138
 overview, 135 to 136
 protocols, defined, 136
 running networked applications, 136
 to 140, 199 to 201
 security fundamentals, 201 to 209
 access control mechanisms, 202
 to 203
 caution, 205
 manipulating server access, 205
 to 208
 MIT-MAGIC-COOKIE-1
 authorization
 protocol, 203, 204 to 206,
 207
 OpenWindows with reduced
 network security, 13
 overview, 201 to 202
 running clients remotely or
 locally as another
 user, 208 to 209
 SUN-DES-1 authorization
 protocol, 204 to 205, 206,
 208
 suspending remote connection, 139
 verifying your location, 140
 New operation, keyboard equivalent, 4
 -newer option (`find` command), 43
 next occurrence, `vi` search, 87
 next screen, moving to, 78
 NIS+, 184
 `admintool` and `hosts` and, 221
 NIS, `admintool` and `hosts` and, 221
 “No write since last change” message, 74

 -noauth option (`openwin`
 command), 13, 202, 205
 nohup command, 23
 nolefty.data file, 192 to 193
 nominal profile
 file contents, 159
 reasons for adjusting, 159
 normal file, 195 to 198
 “Not enough swap memory to continue”
 message, 171
 not operation (`grep` command), 58
 not operator (!), 43
 nroff program, 69
 numbering lines (`vi`), 84 to 85

O
 O command (`vi`), 79
 o command (`vi`), 79
 -o flag (`find` command), 43
 -o nobanner option (`lp` command), 127
 -o option (`lpstat` command), 132
 olwm, 16, 177, 179
 on-line help, *See* `help`
 Open File operation, keyboard
 equivalent, 4
 Open Window operation, keyboard
 equivalent, 4
 opening
 files
 ex, 91
 keyboard equivalent, 4
 vi, 70
 lines (`vi`), 79
 openwin command, 9 to 16
 -auth option, 204
 -dev option, 13 to 16
 grayvis option, 13
 -noauth option, 13, 202, 205
 special options, 12 to 16
 OpenWindows
 See also Administration Tool;
 Command Tool

File Manager, 27

fonts

- customizing, 155 to 157
- listing available, 158

initialization files and, 146

internetworking with

- DECwindows, 211 to 215

keyboard equivalents

- (accelerators), xvii, xviii, 4 to 5

keyboard modification, 189 to 193

logging out from, 11

Mail Tool, 97, 115

migrating from pre-version 3.3 to version 3.3 or later, 176 to 180

migrating from SunView to version 3.3 or later, 175 to 176

networked applications, *See* networks

OPENWINHOME environment

- variable, 6 to 7, 176 to 177

quitting, 11

security, *See* security

start-up procedure, 5 to 11

- monitor type selection, 13
- multiple screens, 13 to 16, 177
- OPENWINHOME environment
- variable and, 6 to 7, 176 to 177
- preparation for, 5 to 8
- pre-version 3.3
- compatibility, 176 to 179
- with reduced network
- security, 13
- shortcut, 9 to 11
- special options, 12 to 16
- SunView compatibility, 175 to 176
- user environment start up, 9 to 11
- versions earlier than 3.3, 5, 6 to 7
- .xinitrc file, 7 to 8, 177 to 179

user profile file and, 9, 146

OPENWINHOME environment variable, 6 to 7, 176 to 177

.openwin-menu file, 179 to 180

/opt directory, 183

options, command, 21

Others user category, 44

OWconfig data error messages, 172

.OWdefaults file, 179

P

~p command (mailx), 109, 121

P command (vi), 82, 83

p command (vi), 82, 83, 92

-p option (lpstat command), 129 to 131, 132

p option (tar command), 232

package installation errors, 171

paging (vi), 77 to 78

parameter setting (vi), 93

parent directory (.), 35 to 36, 46

passwd command, 64 to 65

/passwd file, 136, 141, 143, 144

passwd file, 217

passwords, 63 to 65

- aging, 65
- changing, 64 to 65
- choosing, 63 to 64, 65
- defined, 1
- entering, 2
- overview, 63 to 64
- remote login, 136
- “Sorry” error message, 64, 65
- when to change, 63

Paste operation, keyboard equivalent, 5

pasting, *See* copying; moving

PATH environment variable, 148, 149 to 150

path names, 32, 33, 36 to 37

- environment variables for, 148, 149 to 150

PC cards, *See* PCMCIA cards

PCMCIA cards

- availability of, 223
- copying files, 227 to 232, 237 to 242

- displaying file names on, 229 to 230
- ejecting, 238
- file copying methods, 225
- formatting, 227 to 229, 233 to 237
- inserting, 227
- memory cards, 225 to 227
- mounting by Volume Management, 227
- and Power Management software, 226
- protecting data on, 225 to 226
- removing, 227
- serial/modem card, 243
- support requirements, 224
- terminated applications and, 243
- using, 225 to 227
- vs. diskettes, 223
- percent sign (%)
 - command prompt, 148
 - reactivating remote connection, 140
- period (.), *See* dot (.)
- peripheral vision, and exposure to light, 162
- permissions, 44 to 53
 - absolute, 50 to 53
 - changing, 47 to 53, 153 to 154
 - defaults
 - described, 48
 - setting, 153 to 154
 - described, 44
 - displaying, 45 to 46
 - wildcard character (*) and, 49, 52
- Personal Computer Memory Card International Association cards, *See* PCMCIA cards
- Picture control, adjusting, 163
- PIDs (process identification numbers), 66 to 67
- pipng
 - command output, 22
 - command output through `grep`, 56 to 57, 67
 - `du` output through `sort`, 68
 - mail to `lp` command, 105
 - `ps` output through `grep`, 67
- pixels, characteristics of, 160
- `pkginfo(1)`, 183
- `/platform/*/kernel/unix` file, 182
- plus sign (+), `mailx` folder designator, 112
- pound sign (#)
 - commenting out with, 6, 176
 - `/etc/aliases` file comment designator, 119
 - in passwords, 64
 - root prompt, 117, 148
- Power Management software, 226
- previous folder (`mailx`), 114
- previous occurrence, `vi` search, 87
- previous screen, moving to (`vi`), 77, 78
- Print operation, keyboard equivalent, 5
- `-print` option (`find` command), 42
- printers
 - displaying characteristics, 130 to 131
 - managing, 217, 221
- printing, 123 to 133
 - banner page suppression, 127
 - canceling, 132 to 133
 - changes in subsystem, 182
 - command output, 22
 - copying file before, 127
 - to default printer, 124
 - default printer environment variable, 148
 - file search results, 42
 - files, 75
 - headers, 127
 - keyboard equivalent for, 5
 - mail, 105, 121
 - multiple copies, 126
 - options summary for, 126 to 127
 - requesting completion notification, 125, 127
 - to specific printer, 124 to 125
 - status determination, 127 to 132
 - all status information, 128 to 129
 - available printers, 128
 - options summary for, 131 to 132

- overview, 127
 - print requests, 127 to 128
 - printer characteristics, 130 to 131
 - printer status, 129 to 130
 - submitting print requests, 123 to 125
 - titling printout, 127
 - vi files, 75
 - working directory, 33 to 34
 - private colormap entry allocation error message, 173
 - process identification numbers (PIDs), 66 to 67
 - processes
 - defined, 66
 - status of, 66
 - terminating, 67
 - .profile file
 - described, 146
 - environment variables in, 147 to 150
 - commonly used, 147 to 149
 - HISTORY, 153
 - OPENWINHOME, 6 to 7, 176 to 177
 - PATH, 149, 150
 - PS1 (command prompt), 151
 - umask (file permissions), 153 to 154
 - listing, 46
 - location of, 146
 - OpenWindows quick start up and, 9 to 10
 - profile file, described, 146
 - profile, of calibrated color monitor, 161
 - Programs Menu (Workspace Properties)
 - customizing, 179 to 180
 - customizing fonts, 157
 - prompts, *See* command prompt
 - property window, displaying, keyboard equivalent, 5
 - proportionally-spaced fonts, 155
 - See also* fonts (OpenWindows)
 - Props operation, keyboard equivalent, 5
 - protecting, data on PCMCIA cards, 225 to 226
 - protocols
 - See also* authorization protocols
 - internetwork, defined, 136
 - network, defined, 136
 - ps command, 66
 - PS1 environment variable, 148, 151 to 152
 - PseudoColor visuals, 161
 - puck, *See* calibration puck
 - put command (vi), 82, 83, 92
 - pwd command, 33 to 34
- Q**
- :q command (ex), 74
 - :q! command (ex), 74
 - ~q command (mailx), 121
 - q command (mailx), 101 to 102, 104
 - q option (fdformat utility), 228
 - question mark (?)
 - ~? command (mailx), 121
 - escaping, 61
 - mailx help command, 102, 122
 - metacharacter, 58
 - searching for, 60
 - vi search command, 87
 - quitting
 - mailx program, 101 to 102, 104, 121
 - OpenWindows, 11
 - processes, 67
 - SunOS, 3
 - vi, 73 to 74
 - quotation marks, *See* double quotes; single quotes
- R**
- r command
 - mailx, 110
 - vi, 80
 - :r command (ex), 91
 - R command (mailx), 110
 - ~r command (mailx), 109, 121
 - R option (lpstat command), 132
 - r option

- cp command, 38
 - lpstat command, 132
 - rcp command, 141
 - rm command, 38
 - vi command, 93
- rcp command, 141 to 142, 207
- read permission
 - absolute, 50, 51 to 53
 - relative, 44, 47, 48
- reading files into files (vi), 91
- reading mail, *See* mailx program, reading letters
- recursive copy, 38
- recursive removal, 38
- redirecting command output, 21 to 22
- Redo operation, keyboard equivalent, 5
- redrawing screen (vi), 72
- reflection, minimizing, 162
- regular expressions, 58 to 60
- relative path names, 36 to 37
- relays, defined, 136
- remapping
 - keyboard, 189 to 198
 - mouse buttons, 189
- Remote File Sharing service (RFS)
 - package, 183
- remote login, 136 to 140, 200 to 201, 220
- remote machines, *See* networks
- remote shell command, 142 to 143
- removing, PCMCIA cards, 227
 - See also* deleting
- renaming
 - directories, 37
 - files, 30
- repeating
 - command line commands, 20 to 21
 - operations, keyboard equivalent, 4
 - vi commands, 84
- replacing
 - See also* changing
 - searching and (vi), 61, 89 to 90
- replying to mail (mailx), 110, 121
- Return key, vi and, 76
- right
 - appending text to right of cursor (vi), 78
 - deleting lines to right of cursor (vi), 82
 - moving to (vi), 76, 77
- right device modifier, 15
- rlogin command, 136 to 140, 200 to 201
 - aborting a connection, 138
 - basic procedure, 136
 - without home directory, 137
 - networked applications and, 200 to 201
 - as someone else, 137
 - suspending a connection, 139
 - to unknown machine, 138
- rm command, 30 to 31, 38
- rmdir command, 38
- root directory (/), 32, 33
- root prompt, 117, 148
- root user, becoming, 117
- RS-232 interface, adding to SPARCstation, 223
- rsh command, 142 to 143
- runnable state, 66
- rusers command, 106, 143 to 144

S

- ~s command (mailx), 121
- s command (mailx), 110 to 111
- s command (vi), 80
- S option (lpstat command), 132
- s option (lpstat command), 128, 132
- SAC. *See* System Access Controller
- SAF. *See* Service Access Facility
- Save operation, keyboard equivalent, 5
- saving
 - keyboard equivalent for, 5
 - mail
 - current letter, 121
 - in mbox file, 98, 102

- from mbox file to folder, 111 to 113
 - from mbox file to other file, 110 to 111
 - vi changes
 - and quitting, 74
 - without quitting, 73
 - .xinitrc file changes, 8
- screen
 - multiple screens, OpenWindows start up and, 13 to 16, 177
 - redrawing (vi), 72
- scrolling (vi), 77 to 78
- searching
 - command keyword lookup, 25
 - for files, 41 to 44
 - files and directories, 55 to 62
 - basic search, 55 to 56
 - case sensitivity, 56
 - escape character, 58, 61 to 62
 - filtering, 56 to 57
 - metacharacters and, 58 to 61
 - multi-word strings, 57 to 58
 - not operation, 58
 - regular expressions for, 58 to 60
 - single or double quotes and, 57, 61 to 62
 - mail addresses, 105 to 106
 - for metacharacters, 60 to 61
 - vi, 61, 87 to 90
- searching and replacing (vi), 61, 87 to 90
- security, 201 to 209
 - See also* passwords; permissions
 - access control mechanisms, 202 to 203
 - caution regarding, 205
 - manipulating server access, 205 to 208
 - MIT-MAGIC-COOKIE-1
 - authorization protocol, 203, 204 to 206, 207
 - OpenWindows with reduced network security, 13
 - overview, 201 to 202
 - running clients remotely or locally as another user, 208 to 209
 - SUN-DES-1 authorization
 - protocol, 204 to 205, 206, 208
 - xauth program, 205, 207, 208
 - .Xauthority file, 205 to 208
- SELECT mouse button, xvii, xviii
- Self user category, 44
- semicolon (;)
 - command line concatenator, 19
 - escaping, 61
- sending mail, *See* mailx program, sending letters
- serial port services, managing, 217, 222
- serial/modem cards, *See* PCMCIA cards
- series of files, editing (vi), 91 to 92
- Service Access Facility, 184
- :set all command (ex), 93
- set askcc variable (.mailrc file), 108
- set folder variable (.mailrc file), 112
- set history command (C shell only), 153
- :set ic command (ex), 87
- set noclobber command (C shell only), 152
- :set noic command (ex), 87
- :set nonu command (vi), 85
- :set nu command (vi), 84
- set prompt command, 152
- setting parameters (vi), 93
- sh command, 146
 - See also* Bourne shell
- SHELL environment variable, 148
- Shell Tool window, entering commands using, 17, 19
- shells, 2 to 3
 - See also* Bourne shell; C shell; Korn shell
 - default shell, 2, 146
 - identifying your login shell, 146, 147
 - remote shell command, 142 to 143
 - user profile files for, 146
- shortcuts
 - home directory specification, 34 to 35

- OpenWindows start-up, 9 to 11
- shutdown command, 184
- shutdown procedure, 184
- single quotes, `grep` command and, 57, 61 to 62
- size of files, displaying, 45
- slash, *See* backslash; forward slash
- sleeping state, 66
- software, adding or deleting, 217
- Solaris 2.5, transitioning to, 181 to 187
- “Sorry” error message, 64, 65
- sort command, 68
- source command, 150
- Space Bar, `vi` and, 77
- space on disk, managing, 68
- SPARC machines
 - internetworking OpenWindows with DECwindows, 211 to 215
 - keyboard modification
 - left-handed key remapping, 190 to 192
 - undoing remapping, 192 to 193
 - migrating from SunView to
 - OpenWindows version 3.3 or later, 175 to 176
 - OpenWindows keyboard equivalents (accelerators), xvii, xviii, 4 to 5
 - OpenWindows start up, multiple monitors, 13 to 16
 - transitioning to SunOS 5.x, 184, 185
 - upgrade option, 181
- standard work sessions, defined, 1
- start of file, deleting from (`vi`), 82
- start of line, *See* beginning of line
- start of word, *See* beginning of word
- starting
 - `admintool`, 218
 - `mailx` program, 98
 - OpenWindows, *See* OpenWindows, start-up procedure
 - `vi`, 70 to 71
- startup procedure, 184
- StaticGray visuals, 161
- status
 - file, 45 to 46
 - printer, 127 to 132
 - process, 66
- status line (`vi`), 70, 71
- Stop operation
 - See also* quitting
 - keyboard equivalent, 5
- stopping calibration, 170
- “Stranger: unknown host” message, 138
- strings, defined, 87
- subdirectories
 - See also* directories
 - described, 32 to 33
- Subject: prompt (`mailx`), 99, 108, 121
- substituting characters (`vi`), 80
- SUN-DES-1 authorization protocol
 - allowing access when using, 208
 - described, 204 to 205
 - `.Xauthority` file and, 206
- SunLink, *See* DECnet internetworking (DNI)
- SunOS 4.x
 - changes in, 182 to 184
 - transitioning from, 181 to 185
- SunOS 5.x
 - system files, location of, 182
 - system software, 182
- SunOS Binary Compatibility Package, 185
- SunOS commands, 17 to 25
- SunOS/BSD Source Compatibility Package, 185
- SunView, migrating to OpenWindows version 3.3 or later, 175 to 176
- surround, definition, 162
- suspending remote connection, 139
- `svenv`, 179
- swap space errors, 171
- swapping
 - between files (`vi`), 91
 - between folders and mailbox (`mailx`), 114

swmtool, 183
 SXRK state, 66
 syntax, commands, 24
 System Access Controller, 184
 system administrators, functions of, 1, 3
 system clock, 149
 system crash recovery (*vi*), 93
 system files, location of in SunOS 5.x, 182
 system management, *See* *admintool*
 system panic, 238
 system profile file, 146

T

~t command (*mailx*), 121
 -t dos option (*fdformat* utility), 228, 237
 -t option (*lp* command), 127
 -t option (*lpstat* command), 128 to 129
 tar command, 225, 227 to 232
 temporary files, deleting, 44
 TERM environment variable, 149
 terminals, 184
 environment variables for, 149
 from which command started, 66
 terminating, *See* quitting
 /terminfo database, 183
 TERMINFO environment variable, 149
 text editor
 font customization for, 155 to 158
 See also *vi* editor, xv
 text mode (*vi*), 71 to 72
 tilde (~)
 aborting remote connection, 138
 home directory specifier, 34 to 35
 in mail, 121
 suspending remote connection, 139
 vi case toggle, 95
 vi editing screen marker, 70
 tilde commands (*mailx*)
 ~!, 121
 ~?, 121
 ~c, 108
 ~h, 108
 ~., 121
 ~b, 121
 ~c, 121
 ~d, 121
 ~f, 121
 ~h, 121
 listing, 122
 literal tilde entry, 121
 ~m, 109, 121
 overview, 121
 ~p, 109, 121
 ~q, 121
 ~r, 110, 121
 ~s, 121
 summary of, 121
 ~t, 121
 ~v, 114
 ~w, 121
 ~x, 121
 time zone, setting, 149
 titling printouts (*lp*), 127
 To: prompt (*mailx*), 108, 121
 toggling, *See* changing; swapping
 top device modifier, 15
 top of screen, moving to (*vi*), 77
 touch command, 29
 traced state, 66
 transitioning
 to Solaris 2.5, 181 to 187
 from SunOS4.x, 181 to 185
 transposing characters (*vi*), 80
 troff program, 69, 182
 troubleshooting
 OpenWindows start up, 11
 vi, 72
 TrueColor visuals, 161
 typing mistakes, *See* correcting typing mistakes
 TZ environment variable, 149

U

u command

- mailx, 104
- vi, 81

:u command (ex), 95

U command (vi), 81

-u option (lpstat command), 132

-U option (fdformat utility), 228, 237

umask command, 153 to 154

“Unable to configure profile files in /etc/openwin” message, 171

“Unable to create visual profiles” message, 171

“Unable to get a response from the puck” message, 172

“Unable to get the puck integration time” message, 172

“Unable to get the puck refresh fields value” message, 172

“Unable to get the puck sensitivity value” message, 172

“Unable to read the puck version number” message, 172

“Unable to set the puck averaging value” message, 172

“Unable to set the puck sensitivity value” message, 172

undeleting mail, 104

undeliverable letters, 107

Undo operation, keyboard equivalent, 5

undoing changes (vi), 80 to 81

undoing keyboard remapping

- SPARC, 192 to 193
- x86, 195 to 198

undoing undo

- keyboard equivalent, 5
- vi, 81

upgrade option

- SPARC machines, 181
- x86, 181

uppercase, *See* case sensitivity

user accounts, managing, 217

user names, defined, 1

-user option (find command), 43

user profile file

- See also* .cshrc file; .login file; .profile file

defined, 146

environment variables in, 147 to 153

location of, 146

user types, for setting permissions, 44

user-based access control, 203, 205 to 206

/usr directory, 33, 183

/usr/hosts directory, 33

/usr/lib directory, 33

/usr/openwin directory, 6, 11, 176

/usr/openwin/bin/openwin command, *See* openwin command

/usr/openwin/bin/xauth program, 205, 207, 208

/usr/openwin/etc/devdata/profiles directory, 161

/usr/openwin/etc/devhandlers directory, 172

/usr/openwin/lib/Xinitrc file, 177

V

~v command (mailx), 114

-v option

- grep command, 58

- lpstat command, 132

v option (tar command), 231, 232

/var/mail directory, 98, 183

/var/mail file, 182

/var/spool/mail directory, 183

/var/spool/mail file, 182

VAX, internetworking OpenWindows and DECwindows, 211 to 215

version number

- See also* migrating

- mailx program, 100, 102

- OpenWindows start up with versions prior to 3.3, 5, 6 to 7

vertical bar (|), pipe symbol, 22

vi editor, 69 to 96

- appending text, 78
- breaking lines, 80
- buffers, 73, 83 to 84
- Caps Lock key and, 72
- case sensitivity
 - command names, 72, 76
 - searches, 87
- case toggle, 95
- changing text, 71, 79 to 81
- command mode, 72
- commands
 - case sensitivity, 72, 76
 - entering, 72
 - repeating, 84
 - summary of, 93 to 96
- copying lines
 - ex command, 85 to 86
 - between files, 92
 - vi commands, 82 to 83
- crash recovery, 93
- creating files, 70
- cursor movement, *See* moving around in files
- deleting text
 - ex command, 87
 - vi commands, 81 to 82
- described, 69
- editing screen, 70 to 71
- entry mode, 71 to 72
- Esc key and, 72
- ex commands and, *See* ex commands
- font customization, 155 to 158
- inserting files, 91
- inserting text, 71 to 72, 78 to 79
 - repeatedly, 83 to 84
- joining lines, 80
- last-line mode, 72
- line numbering, 84 to 85
- mailx use of, 114
- modes, 71 to 72
- moving around in files, *See* moving around in files
- moving lines
 - ex command, 86
 - vi commands, 83
- multiple, simultaneous sessions, 73
- multiple-file editing, 91 to 92
- named buffers, 83 to 84
- “No write since last change”
 - message, 74
- opening files, 91
- opening lines, 79
- overview, 69
- paging, 77 to 78
- parameter setting, 93
- printing files, 75
- put command, 82, 83, 92
- quitting
 - and saving changes, 74
 - without saving changes, 74
- read-only version, 69
- redrawing screen, 72
- repeating commands, 84
- saving changes
 - and quitting, 74
 - without quitting, 73
- scrolling in, 77 to 78
- searching and replacing, 61, 87 to 90
- shell environment variable for, 148
- starting, 70 to 71
- status line, 70, 71
- substituting characters, 80
- text entry, 71 to 72
- transposing characters, 80
- troubleshooting unpredictable
 - behavior, 72
- undoing changes, 80 to 81
- undoing undo, 81
- yank command, 82 to 83, 92

video adaptor card, x86-based machines and, 5

view command, 69, 93

viewing environment, changing, 161 to 163

viewing, *See* displaying

visuals, 160, 161

/vmunix file, 182

volcheck command, 238

Volume Management, disabling, 239

W

`:w` command (`ex`), 73

`~w` command (`mailx`), 121

`w` command (`vi`), 76

`w` command (`vi`), 76

`-w` option (`lp` command), 127, 125

WANs (wide area networks)

See also networks

defined, 135

`what is` command, 24 to 25

`who am i` command, remote login, 140

`who` command, 105

wide area networks (WANs)

See also networks

defined, 135

wildcard characters

asterisk (*)

changing permissions with, 49, 52

copying files with, 29

deleting files with, 31

`grep` command, 59 to 60

`vi` search command, 89

`dot` (`.`), `vi` search command, 89

windows

See also OpenWindows

closing to icons, keyboard

equivalent, 4

font customization, 155 to 158

moving between screens

disallowed, 16

opening icons, keyboard

equivalent, 4

“word” command (`vi`), 76

words

changing (`vi`), 79

deleting (`vi`), 81

moving to end of word (`vi`), 76

moving one word (`vi`), 76

searching for beginning of (`vi`), 89

working directory

See also directories

changing, 34 to 36

printing, 33 to 34

Workspace Properties

Programs Menu

customizing, 179 to 180

customizing fonts, 157

`.Xdefaults` file and, 179

`:wq` command (`ex`), 74

wrapped lines, command entry and, 19

write permission

absolute, 50, 51 to 53

relative, 44, 47

write-protection, for PCMCIA cards, 226

X

`x` command

`mailx`, 101, 102, 104

`vi`, 81

`~x` command (`mailx`), 121

`X` command (`vi`), 81

`-x` option (`fdformat` utility), 228

`x` option (`tar` command), 232

X visuals, defined, 160

X11 server

internetworking OpenWindows and

DECwindows, 211 to 215

security fundamentals, 202 to 209

x86

transitioning to Solaris2.5, 186 to 187

upgrade option, 181

x86 machines

Compose Key

disabling/enabling, 189 to

190

keyboard modification

function key remapping, 194 to 198

undoing remapping, 195 to 198

x86-based machines

OpenWindows keyboard equivalents

(accelerators), xvii, xviii, 4 to

5

OpenWindows start-up
 considerations, 5

xauth program, 205, 207, 208

.Xauthority file, 205 to 208

.Xdefaults file (OpenWindows)
 converting .defaults file
 (SunView) to, 175 to 176
 pre-version 3.3, 179

xhost program, 205, 206, 208

xinitrc file, 177

.xinitrc file
 Compose Key
 disabling/enabling, 190
 and migrating from OpenWindows
 pre-version 3.3 to 3.3 and
 later, 177 to 179
 start-up procedures, 7 to 8, 177 to 179

xlib library, older versions of, 202, 203

xlsfonts command, 158

xmodmap command, 189 to 192

xp command (vi), 80

Y

Y command (vi), 82 to 83, 92

yank command (vi), 82 to 83, 92

yy command (vi), 82 to 83

Z

z command (mailx), 103

zombie state, 66

ZZ command (vi), 74

Copyright 1995 Sun Microsystems, Inc., 2550 Garcia Avenue, Mountain View, Californie 94043-1100 USA.

Tous droits réservés. Ce produit ou document est protégé par un copyright et distribué avec des licences qui en restreignent l'utilisation, la copie et la décompilation. Aucune partie de ce produit ou de sa documentation associée ne peuvent être reproduits sous aucune forme, par quelque moyen que ce soit sans l'autorisation préalable et écrite de Sun et de ses bailleurs de licence, s'il en a.

Des parties de ce produit pourront être dérivées du système UNIX[®], licencié par UNIX Systems Laboratories Inc., filiale entièrement détenue par Novell, Inc. ainsi que par le système 4.3. de Berkeley, licencié par l'Université de Californie. Le logiciel détenu par des tiers, et qui comprend la technologie relative aux polices de caractères, est protégé par un copyright et licencié par des fournisseurs de Sun.

LEGENDE RELATIVE AUX DROITS RESTREINTS : l'utilisation, la duplication ou la divulgation par l'administration américaine sont soumises aux restrictions visées à l'alinéa (c)(1)(ii) de la clause relative aux droits des données techniques et aux logiciels informatiques du DFAR 252.227- 7013 et FAR 52.227-19.

Le produit décrit dans ce manuel peut être protégé par un ou plusieurs brevet(s) américain(s), étranger(s) ou par des demandes en cours d'enregistrement.

MARQUES

Sun, Sun Microsystems, le logo Sun, Solaris, SunSoft, le logo SunSoft, SunOS, OpenWindow, DeskSet, ONC, ONC+, NFS sont des marques déposées ou enregistrées par Sun Microsystems, Inc. aux Etats-Unis et dans certains autres pays. UNIX est une marque enregistrée aux Etats-Unis et dans d'autres pays, et exclusivement licenciée par X/Open Company Ltd. OPEN LOOK est une marque enregistrée de Novell, Inc., PostScript et Display PostScript sont des marques d'Adobe Systems, Inc.

Toutes les marques SPARC sont des marques déposées ou enregistrées de SPARC International, Inc. aux Etats-Unis et dans d'autres pays. SPARCcenter, SPARCcluster, SPARCcompiler, SPARCdesign, SPARC811, SPARCengine, SPARCprinter, SPARCserver, SPARCstation, SPARCstorage, SPARCworks, microSPARC, microSPARC II et UltraSPARC sont exclusivement licenciées à Sun Microsystems, Inc. Les produits portant les marques sont basés sur une architecture développée par Sun Microsystems, Inc.

Les utilisateurs d'interfaces graphiques OPEN LOOK[®] et Sun[™] ont été développés par Sun Microsystems, Inc. pour ses utilisateurs et licenciés. Sun reconnaît les efforts de pionniers de Xerox pour la recherche et le développement du concept des interfaces d'utilisation visuelle ou graphique pour l'industrie de l'informatique. Sun détient une licence non exclusive de Xerox sur l'interface d'utilisation graphique, cette licence couvrant aussi les licences de Sun qui mettent en place OPEN LOOK GUIs et qui en outre se conforment aux licences écrites de Sun.

Le système X Window est un produit du X Consortium, Inc.

CETTE PUBLICATION EST FOURNIE "EN L'ETAT" SANS GARANTIE D'AUCUNE SORTE, NI EXPRESSE NI IMPLICITE, Y COMPRIS, ET SANS QUE CETTE LISTE NE SOIT LIMITATIVE, DES GARANTIES CONCERNANT LA VALEUR MARCHANDE, L'APTITUDE DES PRODUITS A REPENDRE A UNE UTILISATION PARTICULIERE OU LE FAIT QU'ILS NE SOIENT PAS CONTREFAISANTS DE PRODUITS DE TIERS.

CETTE PUBLICATION PEUT CONTENIR DES MENTIONS TECHNIQUES ERRONEES OU DES ERREURS TYPOGRAPHIQUES. DES CHANGEMENTS SONT PERIODIQUEMENT APPORTES AUX INFORMATIONS CONTENUES AUX PRESENTES, CES CHANGEMENTS SERONT INCORPORES AUX NOUVELLES EDITIONS DE LA PUBLICATION. SUN MICROSYSTEMS INC. PEUT REALISER DES AMELIORATIONS ET/OU DES CHANGEMENTS DANS LE(S) PRODUIT(S) ET/OU LE(S) PROGRAMME(S) DECRITS DANS CETTE PUBLICATION A TOUS MOMENTS.

